

mGuard Application Notes FL/TC MGUARD

Application Note AH EN MGUARD APPNOTES



Application Note mGuard Application Notes – FL/TC MGUARD

AH EN MGUARD APPNOTES, Revision 10

2025-06-23

This application note is valid for mGuard security appliances of the series FL/TC MGUARD.

Device	Order number
FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX (VPN)	2700634 / (2200515)
FL MGUARD GT/GT(VPN)	2700197 / (2700198)
FL MGUARD SMART2 (VPN)	2700640 / (2700639)
FL MGUARD RS2000 TX/TX VPN	2700642
FL MGUARD RS2000 TX/TX-B	2702139
FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX (VPN)	2700967 / (2700968)
FL MGUARD PCI4000 VPN	2701275
FL MGUARD PCIE4000 VPN	2701278
FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX VPN/MAN	2701866
FL MGUARD RS2005 TX VPN	2701875
FL MGUARD RS4004 TX/DTX (VPN)	2701876 / (2701877)
FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX-P	2702259
FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX VPN-M	2702465
FL MGUARD CENTERPORT	2702547
FL MGUARD CORE TX VPN	2702831
TC MGUARD RS4000 3G VPN	2903440
TC MGUARD RS2000 3G VPN	2903441
TC MGUARD RS4000 4G VPN	2903586
TC MGUARD RS2000 4G VPN	2903588
TC MGUARD RS4000 4G VZW VPN	1010461
TC MGUARD RS2000 4G VZW VPN	1010462
TC MGUARD RS4000 4G ATT VPN	1010463
TC MGUARD RS2000 4G ATT VPN	1010464
FL MGUARD 2102	1357828
FL MGUARD 4302	1357840
FL MGUARD 4302/KX	1696708
FL MGUARD 2105	1357850
FL MGUARD 4305	1357875
FL MGUARD 4305/KX	1696779
FL MGUARD 4102 PCI	1441187
FL MGUARD 4102 PCIE	1357842

Table of contents

		1	For your safety	7
		2	Update and flash FL/TC MGUARD devices	9
		3	Device replacement and migration	85
		4	Logging / Firewall-Logging	105
		5	Create X.509 certificates with OpenSSL	141
		6	Create X.509 certificates with XCA	157
		7	Establish an IPsec VPN connection between iOS client and mGuard device	177
		8	Establish an IPsec VPN connection between Android client and mGuard device .	191
		9	Update the mGuard configuration using pull configuration	203
		10	Installing a new bootloader on mGuard devices	207
		11	Using the CGI Interface	209
		12	LED status indicator and blinking behavior	237
1	For your safety			7
		1.1	Labeling of warning notes	7
		1.2	Qualification of users	7
2	Update and flash FL	/TC M	GUARD devices	9
		2.1	Introduction	10
		2.2	Update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4	11
		2.3	Update to mGuard firmware version 8.6.1	14
		2.4	Update to mGuard firmware version 10.4.1	16
		2.5	Migration of the configuration from mGuard firmware version 8.x to 10.x	16
		2.6	General information about mGuard updates	17
		2.7	FL MGUARD RS2000/4000 TX/TX (inclB, -P, -M)	23
		2.8	FL MGUARD RS2005/4004 TX bzw. TX/DTX	27
		2.9	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 3G VPN	31
		2.10	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VPN	35
		2.11	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VZW VPN	40
		2.12	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G ATT VPN	44
		2.13	FL MGUARD PCI(E)4000	48
		2.14	FL MGUARD SMART2	52
		2.15	FL MGUARD CENTERPORT	56
		2.16	FL MGUARD GT/GT	61
		2.17	FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX	66
		2.18	FL MGUARD 2102/2105, 4305/4305, 4102 PCI(E)	70
		2.19	mGuard Flash Guide	74

mGuard

	2.20	Setting up mGuard firmware update repositories	84
3	Device replacement and m	igration	85
	3.1	Migration from mGuard 8.x to mGuard 10.x	85
	3.2	General procedure	
	3.3	Saving and importing the device configuration	87
	3.4	Cases that require manual adjustment	91
	3.5	Resetting variables to the default settings	92
	3.6	Device differences	93
4	Logging / Firewall-Logging		105
	4.1	Introduction	106
	4.2	Classification into log categories	
	4.3	Log entry (General)	108
	4.4	Log prefix (Firewall)	123
5	Create X.509 certificates w	ith OpenSSL	141
	5.1	Introduction	141
	5.2	Preparing the CA environment	143
	5.3	Modifying the OpenSSL configuration file	144
	5.4	Create the CA Certificate and Key	148
	5.5	Create a Certificate Request for the mGuard	150
	5.6	Sign the mGuard's Certificate Request with the CA	152
	5.7	Creating the mGuard's PKCS#12 file (Machine Certificate)	154
	5.8	Example: VPN connection between two mGuard devices	155
6	Create X.509 certificates w	ith XCA	157
	6.1	Introduction	157
	6.2	Create an XCA database	159
	6.3	Create a certificate template	160
	6.4	Create a CA Certificate	
	6.5	Create a Client Certificate	167
	6.6	Export a certificate	171
	6.7	Sign a Certificate Request with the CA	172
	6.8	Using a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)	174
	6.9	Example: VPN connection between two mGuard devices	175

Table of contents

7	Establish an IPsec VPN co	nnection between iOS client and mGuard device	
	7.1	Introduction	
	7.2	Manage certificates	
	7.3	Configure VPN connections	
	7.4	Start VPN connections on the iOS client	
	7.5	Check VPN connections on the mGuard	
8	Establish an IPsec VPN co	nnection between Android client and mGuard device	
	8.1	Introduction	
	8.2	Manage certificates	
	8.3	Configure VPN connections	195
	8.4	Start VPN connections on the Android client	
	8.5	Check VPN connections on the mGuard	
9	Update the mGuard config	uration using pull configuration	
	9.1	Introduction	
	9.2	Configure pull configuration on the mGuard device	
	9.3	Pull configuration using mdm	204
	9.4	Obtaine pull configuration feedback from server logs	204
10	Installing a new bootloader	on mGuard devices	
	10.1	Introduction	
	10.2	Testing the bootloader	207
11	Using the CGI Interface		209
	11.1	Introduction	209
	11.2	Usage	210
	11.3	Preconditions and restrictions	213
	11.4	Interface nph-vpn.cgi	214
	11.5	Interface nph-diag.cgi	
	11.6	Interface nph.action.cgi	231
	11.7	Interface nph.status.cgi	
12	LED status indicator and bl	inking behavior	237
	12.1	Description of LEDs	
	12.2	LED lighting and blinking behavior	
	12.3	Representation of system states	

mGuard

1 For your safety

Read this user manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

1.1 Labeling of warning notes



This symbol together with the **NOTE** signal word alerts the reader to a situation which may cause damage or malfunction to the device, hardware/software, or surrounding property.



Here you will find additional information or detailed sources of information.

1.2 Qualification of users

The use of products described in this user manual is oriented exclusively to:

- Qualified electricians or persons instructed by them. The users must be familiar with the relevant safety concepts of automation technology as well as applicable standards and other regulations.
- Qualified application programmers and software engineers. The users must be familiar with the relevant safety concepts of automation technology as well as applicable standards and other regulations.

mGuard

2 Update and flash FL/TC MGUARD devices



Document-ID: 108250_en_14

Document-Description: AH EN MGUARD UPDATE © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Contents of this document

The following chapters describe:

- 1. which mGuard firmware versions can be updated to mGuard 8.9.4,
- 2. which mGuard firmware versions can be updated to mGuard 10.5.0,
- 3. which files you need to update your mGuard device,
- 4. how a firmware update is carried out,
- 5. how the flash procedure is carried out.

2.1	Introduction	. 10
2.2	Update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4	. 11
2.3	Update to mGuard firmware version 8.6.1	. 14
2.4	Update to mGuard firmware version 10.4.1	. 16
2.5	Migration of the configuration from mGuard firmware version 8.x to 10.x	. 16
2.6	General information about mGuard updates	. 17
2.7	FL MGUARD RS2000/4000 TX/TX (inclB, -P, -M)	23
2.8	FL MGUARD RS2005/4004 TX bzw. TX/DTX	27
2.9	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 3G VPN	. 31
2.10	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VPN	. 35
2.11	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VZW VPN	40
2.12	TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G ATT VPN	44
2.13	FL MGUARD PCI(E)4000	48
2.14	FL MGUARD SMART2	. 52
2.15	FL MGUARD CENTERPORT	56
2.16	FL MGUARD GT/GT	61
2.17	FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX	66
2.18	FL MGUARD 2102/2105, 4305/4305, 4102 PCI(E)	70
2.19	mGuard Flash Guide	74
2.20	Setting up mGuard firmware update repositories	. 84

2.1 Introduction

The firmware on mGuard devices can be updated in different ways:

- 1. Local Update
- 2. Online Update (not available for FL MGUARD 2000/4000 mGuard 10.x)
- 3. Automatic Update
- 4. Flashing the firmware

In the case of a **firmware update**, the existing configuration of the mGuard device usually remains unchanged.

Flashing an mGuard device deletes the existing configuration, including all passwords, and resets the device to the default status (default settings).

Firmware version 8

Updating to **mGuard firmware version 8.9.4** is described in detail for all mGuard devices in Chapters 1.7 to 1.17. Table 2-1 briefly lists the required update files.

Firmware version 10

Updating to **mGuard firmware version 10.5.0** is described in detail for all mGuard devices in Chapters 1.18. Table 2-3 briefly lists the required update files.

2.2 Update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4



An update to **mGuard firmware version 8.9.4** is only possible from **mGuard firmware version 8.6.1** or later.

If you want to update from a **firmware version < 8.6.1**, you must perform the update in several steps by first updating to version 8.6.1 (see Section 2.3, "Update to mGuard firmware version 8.6.1"). In the next step you can update this version to version 8.9.4.



i

An update to firmware version 8.9.4 is only possible if the function "**Encrypted State Synchronization**" (menu *Redundancy*) has been deactivated before.

The name of the update file to be used depends on the installed firmware version (source version) on the device and contains the following terms: - Source version: 8.6.1 to 8.9.x --> Term: 8.{6-9}

The update to **mGuard firmware version 8.9.4** is described in detail in chapters 1.7 to 1.17, depending on the device (see "Contents of this document"). Table 2-1 briefly lists the required update files depending on the source firmware version.

	Table 2-1	Updating mGuard firmware ve	ersion from 8.6.1 or later t	o 8.9.4: Required files
--	-----------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------

Devices	Local Update	Firmware Flashing
FL MGUARD RS2000	Download file:	Download file:
FL MGUARD RS4000	Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip	FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip
(TX/TX)	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
(incl. variants -B, -P, -M)	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
		install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
FL MGUARD RS2005	Download file:	Download file:
FL MGUARD RS4004	Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip	FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip
(TX respectively TX/DTX)	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
		install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
FL MGUARD PCI(E)4000	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip	FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
		install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
FL MGUARD SMART2	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip	FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
		install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

mGuard

FL MGUARD GT/GT	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip	FW_GTGT_v8.9.4.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	jffs2.img.mpc83xx.p7s
		install.mpc83xx.p7s
FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip	FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
		install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
FL MGUARD CENTER-	Download file:	Download file:
PORT	Update_X86_v8.9.4.zip	FW_X86_v8.9.4.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.x86_64.tar.gz	firmware.img.x86_64.p7s
		install.x86_64.p7s
TC MGUARD RS2000 3G	Download file:	Download file:
VPN	Update_MPC_TC3G_v8.9.4.zip	FW_MPC_TC3G_v8.9.4.zip
TC MGUARD RS4000 3G	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
VPN	gemalto.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.de-	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
		pxs8 03001 0100617.usf.xz.p7s
TC MGUARD RS2000 4G	Download file:	Download file:
VPN	Update MPC TC4G G v8.9.4.zip	FW MPC TC4G v8.9.4.zip
TC MGUARD RS4000 4G	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
VPN	- PLS8-E.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.de-	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
(Firmware update for de-	fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
vices with Gemalto en-		pls8-
Sinc Hom QU/2021)		e_rev04.004_arn01.000.11.usf.xz.p7s

Table 2-1 Updating mGuard firmware version from **8.6.1** or later to **8.9.4**: Required files

TC MGUARD RS2000 4G VPN	Download file : Update_MPC_TC4G_H_v8.9.4.zip	Download file : FW_MPC_TC4H_v8.9.4.zip
VPN (Firmware update for de- vices with Huawei engine - from Q3/2021)	huaweigeneric.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.de- fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s ME909u-521_UP- DATE_12.636.12.01.00.BIN.xz.p7s
TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VZW VPN	Download file: Update_MPC_TC4GVZW_v8.9.4.zip Update files: HL7518.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.de- fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	Download file: FW_MPC_TC4GVZW_v8.9.4.zip Update (flash) files: ubifs.img.mpc83xx install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s RHL75xx.4.04.142600.201801231340. x7160_1_signed_dwl.dwl.xz.p7s
TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G ATT VPN	Download file: Update_MPC_TC4GATT_v8.9.4.zip Update files: HL7588.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.de- fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	Download file: FW_MPC_TC4GATT_v8.9.4.zip Update (flash) files: ubifs.img.mpc83xx install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s RHL75xx.A.2.15.151600.20180920142 2.x7160_3_signed_DWL.dwl.xz.p7s

Table 2-1Updating mGuard firmware version from 8.6.1 or later to 8.9.4: Required files

2.3 Update to mGuard firmware version 8.6.1



Possible from mGuard firmware version 7.6.0.

The name of the update file to be used depends on the installed firmware version (source version) on the device and contains the following terms: Source version: 7.6.0 to 7.6.x --> Term: 7.{6} Source version: 8.0.0 to 8.5.x --> Term: 8.{0-5} Source version: 8.6.0 --> Term: 8.{6}

The update to **mGuard firmware version 8.6.1** is performed in the same way as described in chapters 1.7 to 1.17 (see "Contents of this document"). Table 2-2 briefly lists the required update files depending on the source firmware version.

Devices	Local Update	Firmware Flashing
FL MGUARD RS2000	Download file:	Download file:
FL MGUARD RS4000	Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_8.6.1.zip
(TX/TX)	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
(incl. variants -B, -P, -M)	update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
	update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	
FL MGUARD RS2005	Download file:	Download file:
FL MGUARD RS4004	Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_8.6.1.zip
(TX respectively TX/DTX)	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
TC MGUARD RS2000 3G	Download file:	Download file:
VPN	Update_8.6.1_TC3G_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_TC3G_8.6.1.zip
TC MGUARD RS4000 3G	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	gemalto.update-8.{4-5}-8.6.1.de-	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
	gemalto.update-8.{6}-8.6.1.de-	pxs8_03001_0100617.usf.xz.p7s
	jauit.mpc83xx.tar.gz	

Table 2-2 Updating mGuard firmware version **7.6.0 or later** to **8.6.1**: Required files

TC MGUARD RS2000 4G	Download file:	Download file:
VPN	Update_8.6.1_TC4G_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_TC4G_8.6.1.zip
TC MGUARD RS4000 4G	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
VFIN	huaweigeneric.update-8.{4-5}-8.6.1.de-	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	fault.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
	huaweigeneric.update-8.{6}-8.6.1.de-	ME909u-521_UP-
		DATE_12.636.12.01.00.BIN.xz.p7s
FL MGUARD PCI(E)4000		Download file:
	Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_8.6.1.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
	update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	
FL MGUARD SMART2	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_8.6.1.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
	update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	
FL MGUARD CENTER-	Download file:	Download file:
PORT	Update_8.6.1_x86.zip	FW_X86_8.6.1.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.x86_64.tar.gz	firmware.img.x86_64.p7s
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.x86_64.tar.gz	install.x86_64.p7s
	update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.x86_64.tar.gz	
FL MGUARD GT/GT	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip	FW_GTGT_8.6.1.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	jffs2.img.mpc83xx.p7s
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install.mpc83xx.p7s
	update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	
FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX	Download file:	Download file:
	Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip	FW_MPC_8.6.1.zip
	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
	update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	ubifs.img.mpc83xx
	update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz	install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

Table 2-2Updating mGuard firmware version 7.6.0 or later to 8.6.1: Required files



2.4 Update to mGuard firmware version 10.4.1

An update to **mGuard firmware version 10.5.0** is possible from **all mGuard firmware versions starting with firmware version 10.0.0**.

The name of the update file to be used depends on the installed firmware version (source version) on the device and contains the following terms: Source version: 10.0.x to 10.5.x --> Term: 10.{0-5}

The update to **mGuard firmware version 10.5.0** is described in chapter 1.18 (see "Contents of this document"). Table 2-3 briefly lists the required update files depending on the source firmware version.

Table 2-3	Updating mGuard firmware v	ersion 10.0.0 or later to	10.5.0 Required files
	opdating madara minimare v	CIDIOII TOIOIO OI MACCI IO	

Devices	Local Update	Firmware Flashing
FL MGUARD 4302	Download file:	Download file:
FL MGUARD 4305	Update_mGuard-10.5.0.zip	Firmware_mGuard-10.5.0.zip
FL MGUARD 2102	Update files:	Update (flash) files:
FL MGUARD 2105	update-10.{0-5}-10.5.0.default.aarch64.tar.gz	firmware.img.aarch64.p7s
FL MGUARD 4102 PCI		install.aarch64.p7s
FL MGUARD 4102 PCIE		

2.5 Migration of the configuration from mGuard firmware version 8.x to 10.x

The new mGuard device platform 3 is operated with the mGuard 10.x firmware version. An update from firmware version 8.x to 10.x is not possible.

However, the configuration of mGuard 8.x devices can be migrated to devices with installed mGuard 10.x firmware version.

The procedure for the migration to mGuard 10.5.0 is described in the application note "Device replacement and migration" (AH DE MGUARD MIGRATE 10 - 111259_en_xx), available at phoenixcontact.net/product/<item-number>.

2.6 General information about mGuard updates

PHOENIX CONTACT Web Shop 2.6.1

The available update files for each mGuard device are provided for download on the product page in the PHOENIX CONTACT Web Shop under: phoenixcontact.net/products.

Depending on the installed firmware version, different files must be used for an update.

PRODUCTS	INDUSTRIES & APPLICATIO	ONS COMPANY	EVENTS & NEWS SUPPORT & RESOURCES
	Home > P	roducts > Industrial	l communication > Industrial routers and cybersecurity > Router - FL N
	The figure s product	hows a version of the	Router - FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX 2702259 Security appliance for process applications, 10/100 Mbps, NAT, firewall, 2 tunnel, MODBUS inspector, OPC inspector Free Download available. Downloads
	3D Viewar	d Download	Product Details
	Product De	escription	
	Technical	Data	
	Commerci	al Data	
	Download	s	
		Language	



2.6.2 Versioning: Major, Minor and Patch Releases

The following designations are used in the versioning of the mGuard firmware:

1. Major release (major version number)

Major releases supplement the mGuard with new properties and contain mostly larger and more fundamental changes to the mGuard firmware. Their version number changes in the first digit position. version **8**.6.1, for example, is a major release for version **7**.6.8.

- 2. Minor release (minor version number) Minor releases supplement mGuard with new properties. Their version number changes in the second digit position. version 8.6.0, for example, is a minor release for version 8.4.2.
- 3. **Patch release** (fixing of vulnerabilities / general bug fixing) Patch releases resolve errors in previous versions and have a version number which only changes in the third digit position. version 8.6.**1**, for example, is a patch release for version 8.6.**0**.

2.6.3 Designation of the update files

The file that must be used to update your mGuard device depends on the firmware version installed on the device.

In the file name of the respective update file, it is indicated in **curly brackets** which firmware versions can be updated with this file.

Example "Local Update" RS4000

Using the update file "*update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz*", firmware versions **8.0.0** to **8.5.x** can be updated to version 8.6.1.

In this case the download file is named "Update_8.6.1_MPC.zip".

Example "Online Update" RS4000

With the specification of the package set name "*update*-**7.{6**}-*8.6.1.default*", firmware versions **7.6.0** to **7.6.x** can be updated to version 8.6.1.

2.6.4 Description of the update procedure



NOTE: Do not interrupt the power supply of the mGuard device during the update process! Otherwise, the device could be damaged.

You can find more information on installation, operation and updates for mGuard devices in the firmware reference manual and in the mGuard device manual (available in the PHOENIX CONTACT Web Shop under <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u> or <u>help.mguard.com</u>.):

- mGuard 8.x: 105661_en_xx "UM EN MGUARD"
- mGuard 8.x: 105656_en_xx "UM EN MGUARD DEVICES"
- mGuard 10.x: 110191_en_xx "UM EN FW MGUARD10"
- mGuard 10.x: 110192_en_xx "UM EN HW FL MGUARD 2000/4000"

2.6.4.1 Local Update

The update file (*tar.gz* format) is loaded from the locally connected configuration computer onto the mGuard device and installed via the mGuard web interface (**Management** >> Update >> Update).

Management » Update						
Overview Update	2					
Local Update						?
	Install packages	Install packages	5			
Online Update					1	
	Install package set	Package set name	[+] Install packa	ge set		
Automatic Update						
	Install latest patches	[+] Install latest patches				
	Install latest minor release	[+] Install latest minor rele	ease			
	Install next major version	[1] Install next major vers	ion			
Update Servers						
Seq. \oplus	Protocol	Server	Via VPN	Login	Password	

The firmware versions which can be updated with the update file are indicated in the file names of the update file in curly brackets.

Example (FL MGUARD RS4000):

Major release update: 7.6.8 to 8.6.1:

- Download file: *Update* 8.6.1 MPC
- Update file: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

Minor release update: 8.4.2 to 8.6.1:

- Download file: Update_8.6.1_MPC
- Update file: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

Patch release update: 8.6.0 to 8.6.1:

- Download file: Update_8.6.1_MPC
- Update file: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.6.4.2 Online Update



The update file is loaded from a configurable update server and installed.

The update is initialized through the request of a **package set** on the mGuard web interface (**Management >> Update >> Update**).

Not available for FL MGUARD 2000/4000 devices with firmware version 10.x installed.

Management » Update			
Overview Update			
Local Update			0
Instal	packages 🗅 🕒 Install pack	tages	
Online Update			
Install p	Ackage set Package set name	[↓] Install package set	
Automatic Update			
Install late	st patches Install latest patch	hes	
Install latest mir	or release	r release	
Install next ma	or version [1] Install next major	version	
Update Servers			
Seq. 🕂 Protocol	Server	Via VPN Login	Password
1 (+) https://	← update.innominate.com	n	 ●

The firmware versions which can be updated by means of the selection of the package set name are indicated in the package set names in curly brackets.

Example (FL MGUARD RS4000):

Major release update: 7.6.8 to 8.6.1

- Package set name: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default

Minor release update: 8.4.2 to 8.6.1

- Package set name: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default

Patch release update: 8.6.0 to 8.6.1

- Package set name: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default

() i **NOTE: Online or Automatic Updates** from the installed source firmware version **7.6.8** can lead to an error (see note in Section 2.20, "Setting up mGuard firmware update repositories"). The login information (login + password) does not have to be specified if the update

1

From firmware version 10.3.0, the authenticity of an update server can be ensured by means of an X.509 certificate.

server which has been preset ex-works (https://update.innominate.com) is used.

2.6.4.3 Automatic Update

The update file is automatically determined from the selected update option and loaded and installed by a configurable update server.

The update is initialized via the mGuard web interface (**Management >> Update >> Up-date**) or the mGuard command line "*mg update*".

Overview Update		
Local Update		0
Install packages	Install packages	
Online Update		
Install package set	Package set name III Install package set	
Automatic Update		
Install latest patches	[⊥] Install latest patches	
Install latest minor release	[↓] Install latest minor release	
Install next major version	1 Install next major version	
Update Servers		
Seq. 🕂 Protocol	Server Via VPN Login	Password
1 (+) 🗊 https:// 💌	update.innominate.com	

Update options:

- a) Install latest patches
- b) Install latest minor release
- c) Install next major release

(]

NOTE: Online or Automatic Updates from the installed source firmware version **7.6.8** can lead to an error (see note in Section 2.20, "Setting up mGuard firmware update repositories").



i

It may occur that a **direct Automatic Update** to the current minor or the next major release is not possible from an installed firmware version. In this case, first perform one or more updates on authorized minor or patch releases. Afterwards, you can update to the current minor or the next major release in the last step.

The login information (login + password) does not have to be specified if the update server which has been preset ex-works (https://update.innominate.com) is used.

2.6.4.4 Flashing the firmware

The mGuard firmware is loaded from an SD card, USB flash memory (both with vfat file system) or from a TFTP update server, and installed onto the mGuard device.

Installed licenses remain on the device after flashing (in the case of devices with installed firmware version 5.0.0 or higher).

Configuration profiles and licenses can be installed and activated during the flash process (see Section 2.19, "mGuard Flash Guide").



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all data, passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting. Save any existing configuration as a configuration profile at a safe location before flashing.

NOTE: Downgrading the pre-installed default firmware version is not supported. For mGuard devices produced starting in January 2018, a *downgrade* of the pre-installed default firmware version to an earlier firmware version may fail. If this is the case, flash the device again with the firmware version that was originally installed or a higher version.

2.7 FL MGUARD RS2000/4000 TX/TX (incl. -B, -P, -M)



An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.7.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.7.1.1 Download the update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD RS 4000).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.7.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the Install packages button to start the update.

2.7.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.7.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.7.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: *update-8.*{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.7.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.7.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.7.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.7.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

- FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

2.7.4.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD RS 4000).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following download file:
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx, install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s*) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the */Firmware* directory on the SD card.

1

The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.7.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the *Stat, Mod,* and *Sig* LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the LEDs *Stat, Mod,* and *Sig* flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully. (The flashing behavior is different in the case of simultaneous uploading of a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.8 FL MGUARD RS2005/4004 TX bzw. TX/DTX

An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.8.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.8.1.1 Download update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD RS 4004).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.8.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

¹

2.8.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.8.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.8.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.8.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.8.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.8.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.8.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

- FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

2.8.4.1 Download flash file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD RS 4004).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx, install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s*) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the */Firmware* directory on the SD card.

1

The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.8.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the *Stat*, *Mod*, and *Info2* LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the LEDs *Stat, Mod,* and *Info2* flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully. (The flashing behavior is different in the case of simultaneous uploading of a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.9 TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 3G VPN



An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 (starting from 7.6.0) to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.



A **Local Update** to mGuard firmware version **8.6.1** is possible from version 8.4.0. **Online Update** and **Automatic Update** are possible from version 8.0.0.

2.9.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (*depending on installed firmware version!***):**

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

– Update_MPC_TC3G_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- gemalto.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: gemalto.update-8.{4-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: gemalto.update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.9.1.1 Download the update file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 3G).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_TC3G_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: gemalto.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.9.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e. g. Minor update: gemalto.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz.
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

2.9.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.9.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.9.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the Install package set button to start the update.

2.9.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.9.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.9.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.9.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

FW_MPC_TC3G_v8.9.4.zip

Update files, including modem firmware (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
- pxs8_03001_0100617.usf.xz.p7s

2.9.4.1 Download flash file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 3G).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx*, *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* and *pxs8_03001_0100617.usf.xz.p7s*) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the /Firmware directory on the SD card.



The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.9.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from an TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the *Stat, Mod,* and *Info2* LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the LEDs *Stat, Mod* and *Info2* flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully (differs when uploading a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.10 TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VPN

Order number: 2903588 (RS2000) / 2903586 (RS4000)

i

The required update files depend on the installed modem

The devices 2903588 and 2903586 were produced with two different modems depending on the series:

- until Q3/2021: manufacturer Huawei
- from Q3/2021: manufacturer Gemalto

Depending on the built-in modem, you need different update and download files for an update to firmware version 8.9.0 (see Section 2.10.1).



An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to ver-

sion 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.10.1 Local Update to 8.9.4

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

- Firmware update for devices with Huawei engine:
 - Update_MPC_TC4G_H_v8.9.4.zip (see below)
 - Firmware update for devices with **Gemalto** engine:
 - Update_MPC_TC4G_G_v8.9.4.zip (see below)

Huawei: Update_MPC_TC4G_H_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- huaweigeneric.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: huaweigeneric.update-8.{4-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: huaweigeneric.update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.10.1.1 Download the update file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Updat_MPCeTC4G_H_v8.9.4_.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: huaweigeneric.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.10.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.

- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e. g. Minor update: huaweigeneric.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

Gemalto: Update_MPC_TC4G_H_v8.9.4.zip **Update files** (= unpacked Zip file):

PLS8-E.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.10.1.3 Download the update file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_TC4G_G_v8.9.4_.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: PLS8-E.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.10.1.4 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded **update file**:
 - e. g. Minor update: PLS8-E.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.
2.10.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{4-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.10.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.10.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.10.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.10.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.10.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.10.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

- FW_MPC_TC4G_v8.9.4.zip

Update files, including modem firmware (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
- ME909u-521_UPDATE_12.636.12.01.00.BIN.xz.p7s
- pls8-e_rev04.004_arn01.000.11.usf.xz.p7s

2.10.4.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_TC4G_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx*, *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s*, <u>ME909u-521_UPDATE_12.636.12.01.00.BIN.xz.p7s</u>, and pls8-e_rev04.004_arn01.000.11.usf.xz.p7s,) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the /Firmware directory on the SD card.



The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.10.4.2 Flash mGuard device

NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

1

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the *Stat, Mod,* and *Info2* LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the LEDs *Stat, Mod* and *Info2* flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully (differs when uploading a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.11 TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G VZW VPN

Order number: 1010462 (RS2000) / 1010461 (RS4000)

2.11.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (*depending on installed firmware version!***):**

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_TC4GVZW_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- HL7418.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.11.1.1 Download the update file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G VZW VPN).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_TC4GVZW_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e. g. Minor update: HL7518.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.11.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: HL7518.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the Install packages button to start the update.

2.11.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.11.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.11.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.11.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.11.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.11.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.11.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop: - FW MPC TC4G VZW v8.9.4.zip

Update files, including modem firmware (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
- RHL75xx.4.04.142600.201801231340.x7160_1_signed_dwl.dwl.xz.p7s

2.11.4.1 Download flash file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G VZW VPN).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_TC4G_VZW_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx*, *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* and RHL75xx.4.04.142600.201801231340.x7160_1_signed_dwl.dwl.xz.p7s) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the /Firmware directory on the SD card.



The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.11.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the *Stat, Mod,* and *Info2* LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the LEDs *Stat, Mod* and *Info2* flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully (differs when uploading a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.12 TC MGUARD RS2000/4000 4G ATT VPN

Order number: 1010464 (RS2000) / 1010463 (RS4000)



An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.12.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_TC4GATT_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- HL7588.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.12.1.1 Download the update file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G ATT VPN).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_TC4GATT_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e. g. Minor update: HL7588.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.12.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: HL7588.update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

2.12.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.12.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.12.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.12.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.12.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.12.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.12.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop: - FW MPC TC4G ATT v8.9.4.zip

Update files, including modem firmware (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s
- RHL75xx.A.2.15.151600.201809201422.x7160_3_signed_DWL.dwl.xz.p7s

2.12.4.1 Download flash file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. TC MGUARD RS 4000 4G ATT VPN).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_TC4G_ATT_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx, install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* and RHL75xx.A.2.15.151600.201809201422.x7160_3_signed_DWL.dwl.xz.p7s) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the /Firmware directory on the SD card.



The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.12.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the *Stat, Mod*, and *Info2* LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the LEDs *Stat, Mod* and *Info2* flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully (differs when uploading a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.13 FL MGUARD PCI(E)4000

1

An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.13.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.13.1.1 Download the update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD PCI4000).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e. g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.13.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the Install packages button to start the update.

2.13.2 Online Update to 8.9.4

Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default

i

- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.13.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.13.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.13.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.13.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.13.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.13.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

- FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

2.13.4.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD PCI4000).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx*, *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s*) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the */Firmware* directory on the SD card.

1

The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.13.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- Hold down the reset button of the device: The two WAN LEDs and the upper LAN LED light up green simultaneously. Release the Reset button during this green light phase.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the two WAN LEDs and the upper LAN LED flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully. (The flashing behavior is different in the case of simultaneous uploading of a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.14 FL MGUARD SMART2

1

An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.14.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.14.1.1 Download the update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD SMART2).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e. g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.14.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the Install packages button to start the update.

2.14.2 Online Update to 8.9.4

Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default

i

- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.14.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.14.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.14.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.14.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.14.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.14.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

2.14.4.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD SMART2).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx, install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s*) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server.

1

The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.14.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

To flash the firmware from a TFTP server, a TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until all three LEDs light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: The device searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the TFTP server.
- 2. If all three LEDs flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully. (The flashing behavior is different in the case of simultaneous upload-ing of a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.15 FL MGUARD CENTERPORT

1

An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.15.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

– Update_X86_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.x68_64.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.x68_64.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.x68_64.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.x68_64.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.15.1.1 Download the update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD CENTERPORT).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_X86_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.x68_64.tar.gz.

2.15.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded **update file**:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.x68_64.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

2.15.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.15.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.15.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: *update*-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.*default*
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.15.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.15.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.15.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.15.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

– FW_X86_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- firmware.img.x86_64.p7s
- install.x86_64_p7s

2.15.4.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD CENTERPORT).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_X86_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy the unpacked files *firmware.img.x86_64.p7s*, *install.x86_64_p7s* into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the *Firmware* directory on the SD card or the USB flash drive.

2.15.4.2 Flash mGuard device

NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card / USB flash drive first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card / USB flash drive is found. The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Connect a USB keyboard and a monitor to the device.
- 2. Restart the device.

i

- As soon as the device boots, press one of the arrow keys on the USB keyboard several times until the boot process is interrupted: ↑, ↓, ← or →.
- 4. The boot menu is displayed.

V		QEMU (on pc-10)471)		↑ _ [
GNU GRL	B version 0.97	(637K lower /	130040K up	per memory)	
Boot roc Boot roc Check th Check th Start re Start re	tfs1 itfs2 ie file system(s) iscue procedure c iscue procedure f	of firmware o of firmware o via DHCP/BOOTP+ rom CD / DVD, l	n rootfs1 n rootfs2 TFTP JSB stick o	r SD Card_	
Use t Press passu	he f and 4 keys enter to boot t ord to unlock th Bootmenu	to select whic he selected OS e next set of	h entry is or 'p' to features.	highlighted. enter a	
5. Select o ing the a	ne of the two optic arrow keys ↓ or ↑:	ons to perform th	e flash proc	edure (rescue p	procedure) us

- Start rescue procedure via DHCP / BOOTP+TFTP
- Start rescue procedure from CD / DVD, USB stick or SD card To apply the selection, press the Enter key.

Start rescue procedure via DHCP / BootP+TFTP

Effect: The device downloads the necessary files from the TFTP server:

- install.x86_64_p7s
- firmware.img.x86_64.p7s

After the flash process concludes, the device is in the delivery state (default setting).

General requirements:

- 1. A CD/DVD drive connected to the USB port or
- 2. A USB stick (USB Flash drive) connected to the USB port or
- 3. An SD memory card inserted into the SD card drive.
- 4. The necessary update files were copied onto the installation medium in the following directories:
 - /Firmware/install.x86_64_p7s
 - /Firmware/firmware.img.x86_64.p7s

Effect: After the flash process has been started by pressing the Enter key, the required data is downloaded from the selected medium. After the flash process concludes, the device is in the delivery state (default setting).

Start rescue procedure from CD/DVD, USB stick or SD card

2.16 FL MGUARD GT/GT

1

An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.16.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

– Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.16.1.1 Download the update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD GT/GT).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.16.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e. g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

2.16.2 Online Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version 8.6.1 or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.16.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.16.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: *update-8.*{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.16.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.16.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.16.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.16.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

FW_GTGT_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- jffs2.img.mpc83xx.p7s
- install.mpc83xx.p7s

2.16.4.1 Download flash file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD GT/GT).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_GTGT_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*jffs2.img.mpc83xx.p7s, install.mpc83xx.p7s*) from the directory *GTGT* into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server.

2.16.4.2 Flash mGuard device

NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

To flash the firmware from a TFTP server, a TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Start the flash process by pressing the mode button (see "Section 2.16.4.3, "Function selection by means of mode button (Smart mode)"").
 - The device searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the TFTP server.
- 2. If **05** is shown in the display, and the LEDs flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully. (The flashing behavior is different in the case of simultaneous uploading of a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

i

2.16.4.3 Function selection by means of mode button (Smart mode)

Activate Smart mode

The Mode button is used to call/exit Smart mode and to select the desired function. The three mode LEDs indicate the mode that is currently set and the mode which will apply when exiting Smart mode.

Call up Smart mode

- Disconnect the device from the power supply.
- As soon as the supply voltage is switched on, hold down the Mode button for **more than ten seconds**. The three mode LEDs flash briefly three times and indicate that Smart mode is active.
- When Smart mode is started, the device is initially in the "Exit without changes" state ("51" in the display).

Select the desired setting

• To select the different settings, press the Mode button briefly and select the desired operating mode using a binary light pattern of the mode LEDs and a code on the 7-segment display.

Exit Smart mode and activating the selection

• To exit, press and hold down the Mode button for at least five seconds. The previously selected function is executed.

Possible functions in Smart mode

The device supports the selection of the following functions in Smart mode (see also example below):

Table 2-4	Functions in Smart mode

Function	7-segment display	ACT LED 1	SPD LED 2	FD LED 3
Exit Smart mode without changes	51	Off	Off	On
Activate the recovery procedure	55	On	Off	On
Activate the flash procedure	56	On	On	Off
Apply customized default profile	57	On	On	On

2.17 FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX

1

An update to mGuard firmware version 8.9.4 is possible from version 8.6.1 or later. If necessary, perform the update in two steps, by first updating version < 8.6.1 to version 8.6.1. In the next step, you can update this version to version 8.9.4.

2.17.1 Local Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.17.1.1 Download the update file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD DELTA).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e. g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz

2.17.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default.mpc83xx.tar.gz
- 5. Click the Install packages button to start the update.

2.17.2 Online Update to 8.9.4

Possi

Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

Package set name to be used (depending on installed firmware version!):

A package set name describes from which firmware versions updates can be made to the current firmware version.

- update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- (To 8.6.1: update-7.{6}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{0-5}-8.6.1.default)
- (To 8.6.1: update-8.{6}-8.6.1.default)

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated by specifying the package set name (see Section 2.6.3).

2.17.2.1 Prepare online updates

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.17.2.2 Perform online update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Enter the name of the desired package set in the **Online Update** section under **Install package set**:
 - e.g., Minor update: update-8.{6-9}-8.9.4.default
- 4. Click the **Install package set** button to start the update.

2.17.3 Automatic Update to 8.9.4



Possible from installed firmware version **8.6.1** or later.

2.17.3.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.17.3.2 Start Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

2.17.4 Flash firmware version 8.9.4

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

- FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- ubifs.img.mpc83xx
- install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s

2.17.4.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD DELTA).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following **download file**: *FW_MPC_v8.9.4.zip*
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (*ubifs.img.mpc83xx*, *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s*) from the *mpc* directory into a freely selected directory (e.g. *mGuard-Firmware*) on your TFTP server or in the */Firmware* directory on the SD card.

1

The *ubifs.img.mpc83xx* and *install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s* files can be used to flash all of the devices described in this document, with the exception of FL MGUARD CENTERPORT and FL MGUARD GT/GT.

2.17.4.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.

- 1. Hold down the reset button of the device until the three lower LEDs on the left (ERR, FAULT, INFO) light up green.
 - The device starts the flash process: It first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update file in the */Firmware* directory. If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface in order to obtain an IP address. The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- 2. If the three lower LEDs on the right (ERR, FAULT, INFO) flash green simultaneously, the flash process has been concluded successfully. (The flashing behavior is different in the case of simultaneous uploading of a configuration profile).
- 3. Restart the device.

2.18 FL MGUARD 2102/2105, 4305/4305, 4102 PCI(E)



An update to mGuard firmware version 10.5.0 is possible from version 10.0.0 or later.

All device variants with the suffix K or KX are always included.

2.18.1 Local Update to 10.5.0

Required files (depending on installed firmware version!):

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop: – Update_mGuard-10.5.0.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

update-10.{0-5}-10.5.0.default.aarch64.tar.gz

The curly bracket indicates which installed source firmware versions can be updated with the update file (see Section 2.6.3).

2.18.1.1 Download the update file

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD 4305).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- 5. Download the **download file** *Update_mGuard-10.5.0.zip*.
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Use the **update file** provided for the firmware version installed on your device (see Section 2.6.3):
 - e.g. Minor update: update-10.{0-5}-10.5.0.default.aarch64.tar.gz

2.18.1.2 Install Local Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. In the Local Update section, click the D No file selected symbol under Install packages.
- 4. Select the downloaded update file:
 - e.g. Minor update: update-10.{0-5}-10.5.0.default.aarch64.tar.gz
- 5. Click the **Install packages** button to start the update.

2.18.2 Automatic Update to 10.5.0

2.18.2.1 Prepare Automatic Update

- 1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.
- 3. Make sure that at least one valid update server is entered in the **Update Servers** section.

2.18.2.2 Start Automatic Update

1. Log on as *admin* user on the web interface of the mGuard device.

2. Select Management >> Update >> Update.

- 3. Click the button of the desired update process in the **Automatic Update** section to start the update:
 - a) Install latest patches
 - b) Install latest minor release
 - c) Install next major release

Flash firmware version 10.5.0 2.18.3

Required files:

Download file on the device-specific product page in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop:

Firmware mGuard-10.5.0.zip

Update files (= unpacked Zip file):

- firmware.img.aarch64.p7s
- install.aarch64.p7s

2.18.3.1 Download flash file

- 1. Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: phoenixcontact.com/products.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD 4305).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the Downloads tab and the Firmware update category.
- 5. Download the following download file: Firmware_mGuard-10.5.0.zip
- 6. Unpack the Zip file.
- 7. Copy all unpacked files (firmware.img.aarch64.p7s, install.aarch64.p7s) into a freely selected directory (e.g. mGuard-Firmware) on your TFTP server or in the /Firmware directory on the SD card.

Ì.

The *firmware.img.aarch64.p7s* and *install.aarch64.p7s* files can be used to flash the devices described in this document (platform 3 devices with installed firmware version 10.x).

2.18.3.2 Flash mGuard device



NOTE: Flashing the firmware deletes all passwords and configurations on the mGuard device. The device is reset to its default setting.

During flashing, the firmware is always loaded from an SD card first. The firmware is only loaded from a TFTP server if no SD card is found.

The TFTP server must be installed on the locally connected computer.



Damage to the device in case of premature termination Do not restart the device until the flash procedure is completed. (Duration: approximately 2 minutes.)

FL MGUARD 2102/4302 FL MGUARD 2105/3405

Performing a flash procedure (rail mounted devices)

- Press and hold the Mode button of the device for at least nine seconds until the "PF1-5" LEDs light up green.
- Release the Mode button. Otherwise, the device will be restarted. •
- \hookrightarrow The flash procedure is executed.
- ↔ After approximately 20 seconds, the **PF1-3** LEDs light up in "Running light" mode (green). The **FAIL** LED lights up (red):
 - The device first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update files in the /Firmware directory.
 - If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface (XF2) in order to obtain an IP address.
| \hookrightarrow The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server. | |
|--|--|
|--|--|

- → The device is automatically restarted again during the flash procedure.
 Do not switch off the device prematurely under any circumstances. Wait until the flash procedure has finished completely.
- \hookrightarrow The **FAIL** LED then lights up permanently (red).
- ↔ After another approximately 60 seconds, the **PF1-3** LEDs flash (green).
- ↔ The flash procedure has been completed successfully. Duration: approximately 2 minutes.
- Restart the device by briefly pressing the Mode button or temporarily disconnecting the device from the power supply.
- ↔ The device is ready to operate when the **PF1** LED flashes green (heartbeat).

FL MGUARD 4102 PCI(E) Performing a f

Performing a flash procedure (PCI cards)

- Press and hold the Mode button on the front panel of the device for at least nine seconds until the **PF1 LED** as well as the **LEDs of the Ethernet sockets** (XF1/2) light up green.
- Release the Mode button. Otherwise, the device will be restarted.
- \hookrightarrow The flash procedure is executed.
 - The device first searches for an inserted SD card and for the corresponding update files in the */Firmware* directory.
 - If the device does not find an SD card, it searches for a DHCP server via the LAN interface (XF2) in order to obtain an IP address.
- \hookrightarrow The required files are loaded and installed from the SD card or the TFTP server.
- ↔ The device is automatically restarted again during the flash procedure.
- ↔ The **PF1/FAIL** LED then lights up and flashes green and red.
- ↔ After another approximately 60 seconds, the SPD LEDs (XF1/2) flash additionally (green).
- ↔ The flash procedure has been completed successfully. Duration: approximately 2 minutes.
- Restart the device.
- ↔ The device is ready to operate when the **PF1** LED flashes green (heartbeat).

2.19 mGuard Flash Guide

2.19.1 Flashing mGuard devices

The mGuard firmware is loaded and installed onto the mGuard device from an SD card, USB flash memory (both with vfat file system) or from a TFTP update server. All data, passwords, and configurations on the device are deleted. The device is reset to its default setting.

Carrying out the flash process is described individually for every mGuard device in this document (see the device-specific Section "*Flashing firmware version 8.9.4*").



NOTE: Downgrading the pre-installed default firmware version is not supported. For mGuard devices produced starting in January 2018, a *downgrade* of the pre-installed default firmware version to an earlier firmware version may fail. If this is the case, flash the device again with the firmware version that was originally installed or a higher version.

A downgrade is no longer possible from an installed firmware version 10.5.0.

2.19.2 Problems with incompatible SD cards

When you flash the mGuard device with an SD card from a manufacturer other than PHOENIX CONTACT, the flashing procedure described in this document may fail.

To avoid problems flashing with SD cards of other manufacturers, proceed as follows during the described flashing procedure:

- 1. Push the card lightly into the device without engaging it.
- 2. Start the flash procedure as described for your device.
- 3. Hold down the reset button of the device until the corresponding LEDs light up.
- 4. Release the reset button.
- 5. Immediately push the card firmly into the slot until it engages.
- 6. Wait until the flashing procedure is over, then restart the device.

2.19.3 Uploading configuration profile during the flash process

You can automatically upload and activate a created configuration profile (ATV profile) onto the mGuard device during the flash process.



The flashing behavior of the LEDs after the flash process deviates in this case from the standard flashing behavior.

2.19.3.1 Preparation

Create the file *preconfig.sh* with the following contents:

For unencrypted ATV profiles

#!/bin/sh

exec gaiconfig --silent --set-all < /bootstrap/preconfig.atv

For encrypted ATV profiles

#!/bin/sh /Packages/mguard-tpm_0/mbin/tpm_pkcs7 < /bootstrap/preconfig.atv.p7e | gaiconfig \ --factory-default --setall



If you wish to upload a configuration profile encrypted with the device certificate, you should change the file's name from **.atv* to **.atv.p7e.* Encrypted and unencrypted configuration profiles can be kept apart easier in this way.

The mGuard device treats the ATV profile equally, independent of the file ending.

During the flash process, the device searches for the following files and uploads them:

- /Rescue Config/<Seriennummer>.atv
- /Rescue Config/<Seriennummer>.atv.p7e
- /Rescue Config/preconfig.atv
- /Rescue Config/preconfig.atv.p7e
- /Rescue Config/preconfig.sh

2.19.3.2 Loading configuration profile from SD card

In order to upload and activate a configuration profile during the flash process, proceed as follows:

- 1. Besides the *Firmware* directory, also create the *Rescue Config.* directory.
- 2. Rename the saved configuration profile as *preconfig.atv or <Seriennummer>.atv*.
- 3. Copy the configuration profile to the *Rescue Config.* directory.
- 4. Copy the *preconfig.sh* file (UNIX-Format) to the *Rescue Config.* directory.
- 5. Carry out the flash process as described for your device.

2.19.3.3 Loading configuration profile from the TFTP server

In order to load and activate a configuration profile during the flash process, see the description in Section 2.19.5, "Setting up DHCP and TFTP servers".



2.19.4 Uploading licence file during the flash process

Not for FL MGUARD 2000/4000 series devices with firmware version mGuard 10.x installed.

A licence file can be uploaded onto the mGuard device and activated during the flash process as follows (e. g. a licence for more VPN connections *FL MGUARD LIC VPN-10* or for a lifetime software update *FL MGUARD LIC LIFETIME FW*).

2.19.4.1 From SD card

In order to upload and activate a licence file during the flash process, proceed as follows:

- 1. Create the Rescue Config. directory on the installation medium.
- 2. Copy the licence file in the *Rescue Config.* directory.
- 3. Rename the licence file as *license.lic or <Seriennummer>.lic*.
- 4. Carry out the flash process as described for your device.

2.19.4.2 From the TFTP server

In order to load and activate a licence file during the flash process, see Section 2.19.5, "Setting up DHCP and TFTP servers".

2.19.5 Setting up DHCP and TFTP servers



Network problems

If you install a second DHCP server in a network, this could affect the configuration of the entire network.



Phoenix Contact does not undertake any guarantee or liability for the use of third-party products. Any reference to third-party software does not constitute a recommendation, rather serves as an example of a program that could be used.

2.19.5.1 Under Windows

If you wish to use the third-party program "*TFTPD32.exe*", obtain the program from a trustworthy source, and proceed as follows:

- 1. If the Windows PC is connected to a network, disconnect it from the network.
- 2. On the Windows PC, create a directory that you wish to use for the flash process of mGuard devices. This directory is later selected as root directory of the TFTP server. All the files required are loaded from this directory during the flash process.
- 3. Copy the desired firmware image file(s) into the created directory.
- 4. **(Uploading licence file)** If a **licence file** is to be uploaded and installed onto the mGuard device during the flash process, copy the file into the directory that has been created. Name the file as follows:
 - license.lic or
 - <Serial number>.lic.
- 5. (Uploading configuration profile) If a configuration profile is to be uploaded and activated on the mGuard device during the flash process, copy the corresponding rollout script (rollout.sh, see Section 2.19.6, "Sample script: rollout.sh") and the configuration profile in the directory that has been created. Name the configuration profile as follows:
 - *preconfig.atv* (if all mGuard devices should receive the same configuration) or
 - <Seriennummer>.atv (if each mGuard device should receive an individual configuration).
- 6. Start the TFTPD32.exe program.

The host IP to be specified is: **192.168.10.1**. It must also be used as the address for the network card.

7. Click the **Browse** button to switch to the directory where the mGuard image files are saved: (e. g. *install-ubi.mpx83xx.p7s, ubifs.img.mpc.p7s*).

8. Make sure that this really is the correct licence file for the device (under "Management >> Update" on the web interface).

Tftpd32 by Pl	. Jounin			
Current Directory	E:\my			Browse
Server interface	192.168.10.1		•	Show Dir
Tftp Server DH	CP server			
Connection rec Read request f <install.p7s>: s Connection rec Read request f <iffs2.img.p7s></iffs2.img.p7s></install.p7s>	eived from 192.168.10.2 r file kinstall p7s>. Mode nt 4 blks, 2048 bytes in eived from 192.168.10.2 r file kjfts2.img.p7s>. Mo sent 14614 blks, 74823	00 on port 1024 [26. s octet [26/11 09:41 1 s. 0 blk resent [26. 00 on port 1024 [26. de octet [26/11 09: 68 bytes in 11 s. 0 b	/11 09:41:19.774 19.774] /11 09:41:20.786 /11 09:43:17.053 43:17.053] Ik resent [26/11 /	+] 5] 9] 09:43:28.008]
Current Action	<jffs2.img.p7s>:</jffs2.img.p7s>	sent 14614 blks, 74	82368 bytes in 11	1 s. 0 blk resent
About		Settings		Help

- Figure 2-3 Entering the host IP
- 9. Switch to the "TFTP Server" or "DHCP Server" tab and click the "Settings" button to set the parameters as follows:

E:\my	Browse
Global Settings TFTP Server 「Syslog Server TFTP Client 「DHCP Server	Syslog server
TFTP Security C None Standard C High C Read Only TFTP config Timeout (sec Max Retrans Tftp port	uration conds) <u>3</u> smit <u>6</u> 69
Advanced TFTP Options Option negotiation Show Progress bar Translate Unix file names Use Tfpd32 only on this interface Use anticipation window of Advanced Advanced Use anticipation window of Allow 'V'As virtual root	Hide Window at startup Create "dir.txt" files Beep for long tranfer 1921 691001



Current Directory	E:\r	ny	Browse
Server interface	192.168.10.1		· Show Di
Tftp Server DH	ICP s	erver	
IP pool starting a Size of pool Boot File	addre:	^{\$\$} 192.168.10.200 30	- S
WINS/DNS Ser	ver	0.0.0.0	v
Default router		0.0.0.0	e
Mask		255.255.255.0	
Domain Name			

2.19.5.2 Under Linux

All current Linux distributions include DHCP and TFTP servers.

- 1. Install the corresponding packages according to the instructions provided for the respective distribution.
- 2. Configure the DHCP server by making the following settings in the */etc/dhcpd.conf* file:

subnet 192.168.134.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 { range 192.168.134.100 192.168.134.119; option routers 192.168.134.1; option subnet-mask 255.255.255.0; option broadcast-address 192.168.134.255;} This example configuration provides 20 IP addresses (.100 to .119). It is assumed that the DHCP server has the address 192.168.134.1 (settings for ISC DHCP 2.0).

The required TFTP server is configured in the following file: /etc/inetd.conf

- In this file, insert the corresponding line or set the necessary parameters for the TFTP service. (Directory for data: /tftpboot)
 tftp dgram udp wait root /usr/sbin/in.tftpd -s /tftpboot/
 The mGuard image files must be saved in the /tftpboot directory: e.g. installubi.mpx83xx.p7s, ubifs.img.mpc.p7s.
- 4. **(Uploading licence file)** If a **licence file** is to be uploaded and installed onto the mGuard device during the flash process, copy the file into the */tftpboot* directory. Name the file as follows:
 - license.lic or
 - <Serial number>.lic.
- 5. (Uploading configuration profile) If a configuration profile is to be uploaded and activated on the mGuard device during the flash process, copy the corresponding rollout script (rollout.sh, see Section 2.19.6, "Sample script: rollout.sh") and the configuration profile in the /tftpboot directory. Name the configuration profile as follows:
 - preconfig.atv (if all mGuard devices should receive the same configuration) or
 - <Seriennummer>.atv (if each mGuard device should receive an individual configuration).
- 6. Then restart the *inetd* process to apply the configuration changes.
- 7. If using a different mechanism, e.g., *xinetd*, please consult the corresponding documentation.

2.19.5.3 TFTP server: Error messages

During the flash process, the mGuard device searches by default for the files *rollout.sh*, *license.lic* and *<Seriennummer>.lic*. If these files are not available, a corresponding error message is displayed:

File rollout.sh: error 2 in system call CreateFile The system cannot find the file specified. File <serial number>.lic : error 2 in system call CreateFile The system cannot find the file specified. File licence.lic: error 2 in system call CreateFile The system cannot find the file specified.

The error message can be ignored if no licence file is uploaded, or the mGuard device should not be preconfigured via the *rollout.sh* script. The flash process is continued as planned in such cases.

2.19.6 Sample script: rollout.sh



Use of rollout scripts

The implementation and use of a rollout script is not a part of the mGuard product or mGuard firmware supported by PHOENIX CONTACT. Responsibility for the implementation and use of a rollout script lies solely with the customer and not PHOENIX CONTACT.

During the flash process, the mGuard device checks the presence of the *rollout.sh* file. This file must be located in the same directory as the firmware image file on the TFTP server. If the file exists, it is uploaded on the mGuard device and run there.

The *rollout.sh* file must be a UNIX shell script. The configuration data for the mGuard device can be requested from the TFTP server with the script, and the configuration program of the mGuard device (*gaiconfig*), started.

The rollout script documented here serves as a template and only can be used in a manner individually adapted by the customer. In principle, the rollout support can be implemented in two ways, so that

- "all" mGuard devices receive the same configuration (static TFTP), or
- "every" mGuard receives its own individual configuration depending on its serial number (dynamic TFTP).

2.19.6.1 Static TFTP (standard configuration for every mGuard device)

A sample *rollout.sh* script is documented below. This downloads a standard configuration file for installation on mGuard devices from the TFTP server via *tftp*. The name of the configuration file defined in the script is *preconfig.atv*.

#!/bin/sh -ex # The IP address of the DHCP/TFTP server # is supplied by install.p7s install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s install.mpc83xx.p7s # install.aarch64.p7s
server=\$1
This is the filename of the user supplied static configuration file # on the host in the TFTP-server directory
cfg_name=preconfig.atv export PATH=/bin:/bootstrap
fetch the static configuration-file "preconfig.atv"
tftp -g -lr "\$cfg_name" "\${server}" dd bs=1M of=/bootstrap/preconfig.atv
create a small configuration-script that installs the # configuration fetched from \${server}
cat >/bootstrap/preconfig.sh < <eof< td=""></eof<>
#!/bin/sh
modprobe param_dev 2>/dev/null gaiconfigsilentset-all < /bootstrap/preconfig.atv EOF
Make it executable. It will be executed after all packets # are installed completely.
chmod 755 /bootstrap/preconfig.sh

2.19.6.2 Dynamic TFTP (individual configuration for every mGuard device)

A sample *rollout.sh* script is documented below. This downloads a device-specific configuration file from the TFTP server via *tftp*. The name of the configuration file defined in the script is *<serialnumber>.atv*.

#!/bin/sh -ex
The IP address of the DHCP/TFTP server # is supplied by install.p7s install-ubi.mpc83xx.p7s install.mpc83xx.p7s # install.aarch64.p7s
server=\$1 export PATH=/bin:/bootstrap mount -t proc none /proc : mount -t sysfs sysfs /sys : if test -f /proc/sys/mguard/parameter/oem_serial ; then SERIAL=` cat /proc/sys/mguard/parameter/oem_serial` else SERIAL=` sysmguard param oem_serial` fi
This is the filename of the user supplied static configuration file # on the host in the TFTP-server directory
cfg_name=\${SERIAL}.atv
fetch the static configuration-file "preconfig.atv"
tftp -g -l /bootstrap/preconfig.atv -r \$cfg_name \${server}
create a small configuration-script that installs the # configuration fetched from \${server}
cat >/bootstrap/preconfig.sh < <eof< td=""></eof<>
#!/bin/sh
modprobe param_dev 2>/dev/null : gaiconfigsilentset-all < /bootstrap/preconfig.atv EOF
Make it executable. It will be executed after all packets # are installed completely.
chmod 755 /bootstrap/preconfig.sh umount /proc umount /sys :

2.20 Setting up mGuard firmware update repositories

1

If you have questions, please contact Support at your local PHOENIX CONTACT subsidiary.

To update your mGuard devices, you can use your own update server (Unix or Windows server). You can download the required update files on the device-specific product pages in the Phoenix Contact Web Shop.

Download file:

- FL MGUARD CENTERPORT
 Unix and Windows Server: mguard-firmware-repositories_x86_v8.9.4.zip
- Other FL/TC MGUARD devices (mGuard 8.x)
 Unix and Windows Server: mguard-firmware-repositories_mpc_v8.9.4.zip
- Other FL MGUARD devices (mGuard10.x)
 Unix and Windows Server: mguard-firmware-repositories_10.5.0.zip

To operate an update server, proceed as follows:

- Open the website of the Phoenix Contact Web Shop in a web browser at: <u>phoenixcontact.com/products</u>.
- 2. Search for the device's product name (e.g. FL MGUARD RS 4000).
- 3. Open the desired product page.
- 4. Select the *Downloads* tab and the *Firmware update* category.
- Download the desired **Download file**: mguard-firmware-repositories_mpc_v8.9.4.zip
- 6. Copy the contents of the ZIP folder onto your update server.
- 7. Enter the update server on the mGuard web interface under **Management >> Update** >> **Update** (see Section 2.6.4.3, "Automatic Update").
- 8. You can now carry out **Online Updates** or **Automatic Updates** from your update server.



NOTE: Online or Automatic Updates from the installed source firmware version **7.6.8** can lead to an error when the update server is operated with newer versions of the Apache Web Server (e.g. 2.4.18).

This problem will not occur if the Phoenix Contact update server which has been preset ex-works (<u>https://update.innominate.com</u>) is used.

To avoid the problem, an update server such as *nginx* or *fnord* can be used instead of an Apache Web Server.

3 Device replacement and migration

Document-ID: 111259_en_03

Document-Description: AH EN MGUARD MIGRATE 10 © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



i

Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

3.1	Migration from mGuard 8.x to mGuard 10.x	85
3.2	General procedure	. 87
3.3	Saving and importing the device configuration	. 88
3.4	Cases that require manual adjustment	. 92
3.5	Resetting variables to the default settings	. 93
3.6	Device differences	. 94

3.1 Migration from mGuard 8.x to mGuard 10.x

The devices of the new FL MGUARD 2000/4000 series are compatible with the devices of the previous series (previous models with mGuard 8.x firmware) (see Table 3-1).

It is therefore possible to import and activate a configuration profile created on the predecessor model (mGuard 8.x) on the new device (mGuard 10.x).

The configuration can be migrated or imported in three ways:

- Import via web interface (Section 3.3.1)
- Import via SD card (Section 3.3.2)
- Import via "mGuard device manager (mdm)" (see mdm user manual)

For the majority of applications, the migration is performed directly and without additional configuration effort.

Table 3-1	Migration of the configuration of compatible devices:
	mGuard 8.x> 10.5

New devices – mGuard 10	Item number	Previous models – mGuard 8	Item number
FL MGUARD 4302	1357840	FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX (VPN)	2700634 / (2200515)
FL MGUARD 4302/KX	1696708	FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX-P	2702259
FL MGUARD 4305	1357875	FL MGUARD RS4004 TX/DTX (VPN)	2701876 / (2701877)
FL MGUARD 4305/KX	1696779		
FL MGUARD 2102	1357828	FL MGUARD RS2000 TX/TX VPN	2700642
		FL MGUARD RS2000 TX/TX-B	2702139
FL MGUARD 2105	1357850	FL MGUARD RS2005 TX VPN	2701875
FL MGUARD 4102 PCI	1441187	FL MGUARD PCI4000 VPN	2701275
FL MGUARD 4102 PCIE	1357842	FL MGUARD PCIE4000 VPN	2701278

MGUARD 10

New devices – mGuard 10	Item number	Previous models – mGuard 8	Item number
The models specified on the right do not represent pre-		FL MGUARD GT/GT (VPN)	2700197 / (2700198)
decessor models in the true sense	. However, your con-	FL MGUARD SMART2 (VPN)	2700640 / (2700639)
corresponding adjustments.		FL MGUARD DELTA TX/TX (VPN)	2700967 / (2700968)
		FL MGUARD RS4000 TX/TX VPN-M	2702465



In rare cases and for certain configurations, it may be necessary to adapt the existing configuration (mGuard 8) before migrating (see Section 3.4).

1

Please note that configurations of FL MGUARD (RS)4000 series devices can only be migrated after adjustments to FL MGUARD 2000 series devices.

3.2 General procedure

- Start the old device (mGuard 8).
- Save the current configuration of the old device to an external data carrier.
- Check whether unsupported functions are activated.
- If necessary, set unsupported functions to the default settings.
- Save and export the adapted configuration of the old device.
- Start the new device (mGuard 10).
- Import the previously exported configuration onto the new device.
- Check exactly whether the configuration has been imported successfully.
- If not already done so: Activate the imported configuration on the new device.
- Disconnect the old device from the power supply.
- Disconnect the old device from the network.
- If necessary, disconnect the service contacts (I/Os) of the old device.
- Connect the new device to the network.
- If necessary, connect the service contacts (I/Os) of the new device.
- Start the new device.
- ↔ Firewall rules are activated.
- $\hookrightarrow \quad \text{Network connections and VPN connections are established.}$
- Check whether the connections in your network behave as expected.
- If necessary, remove the SD card from the device.

Result

- \hookrightarrow The old device configuration was imported and activated on the new device.
- \hookrightarrow All migrated functions are executed on the new device as usual.
- \hookrightarrow The old device can be removed and taken out of operation (Decommissioning mode).

Video

The process of device migration is also shown in a short video on the Phoenix Contact website.

Link to the video: phoe.co/security-router-mGuard

3.3 Saving and importing the device configuration

3.3.1 Import via web-based management (WBM)



In rare cases and for certain configurations, it may be necessary to adapt the existing configuration (mGuard 8) before migrating (see Section 3.4).

To export a configuration via the WBM from an mGuard 8 device and import it to an mGuard 10.5 device, proceed as follows.

Conf	iguration Pro	ofiles		
Config	juration Pr	ofiles		
Status	Name		Size	Action
\oslash	Factory De	fault	37544	⊕ ±
~	Migration		50697	± 0
	5	Save current configuration to profile	Profile name	Save
Please	note: Only ap	plied changes will be saved.		
		Upload configuration to profile	Profile name	🗅 🏦 Upload

Exporting the configuration profile

First, create and export a configuration profile on the old device (mGuard 8.x):

- Open the menu "Management >> Configuration Profiles >> Configuration Profiles".
- At "Save current configuration to profile":
 - Give the profile a profile name.
 - Click on 🗖 "Save".
- ↔ The configuration profile appears in the list of saved profiles.
- Click on the name of the configuration profile you want to migrate.
- ↔ The profile is downloaded to the configuration computer: <*name>.atv*

Importing the configuration profile

Then import the exported configuration profile into the new device (mGuard 10.5):

- Open the menu "Management >> Configuration Profiles >> Configuration Profiles".
 - At "Upload configuration to profile":
 - Give the profile a profile name.
 - Click on the 🛅 icon to select the previously created configuration profile.
 - Click on 🛨 "Upload".
- ↔ The configuration profile is imported into the device and appears in the list of saved profiles.
- Activate the profile by clicking on the "Restore profile" icon $oldsymbol{9}$.
- ↔ The configuration profile is activated

3.3.2 Import via SD card (ECS)



In rare cases and for certain configurations, it may be necessary to adapt the existing configuration (mGuard 8) before migrating (see Section 3.4).

To export an SD card configuration from an mGuard 8 device and import it to an mGuard 10.5 device, proceed as follows.

External Configuration Storage (ECS)	
State of the ECS	Not present
Save current configuration on the ECS	Root password
Load configuration from the ECS	E Load
Automatically save configuration changes to the ECS	
Encrypt the data on the ECS	
Please note: Encrypted ECS data can only be read by this dev	ice.
Load configuration from the ECS during boot	

Exporting a configuration

Save the configuration of the old device (mGuard 8.x) on an SD card:

- Open the menu "Administration >> Configuration Profiles >> External Configuration Storage (ECS)":
- At "Save current configuration on the ECS":
 - Enter the password of the user Root on.
 - Click on the "Save" button 🕋 .
- ↔ The currently stored configuration is written to the SD card inserted.



The configuration on the external storage medium also contains the encrypted passwords (hashed) for the *root*, *admin*, *netadmin*, *audit*, and *user* users, as well as for SN-MPv3 users. These are also applied during charging.

Importing a configuration

The configuration can be imported in two ways:

1. Automatically on startup

- Insert the SD card with the saved configuration **before startup** into the new device.
- Start the device.
- ↔ The configuration is automatically loaded and activated.

2. Manual

- Insert the SD cards with the saved configuration after the start into the new device.
- Log in to the web interface (WBM) of the device.
- Open the menu "Administration >> Configuration Profiles >> External Configuration Storage (ECS)".
- Start the "Load configuration from the ECS" function.
- \hookrightarrow The configuration is loaded and activated.

3.3.3 Signed configuration profiles

From firmware version mGuard 10.5.0, it is possible to sign configuration profiles. On devices configured accordingly, it is then only possible to import and use signed configuration profiles. Unsigned configurations will be rejected.

If you still want to import unsigned, already exported configuration profiles on such a device, you can also sign them manually with a machine certificate of the mGuard device before importing them. The procedure is described below.

Required files Make the following files available.

Table 3-2	Required files ((the names are examples)

my_profile.atv	Configuration profile (e.g. <i>my_profile.atv</i>) that is to be signed.
= configuration profile	
sign.crt	Machine certificate with which the configuration profile is to
= machine certificate	be signed. (The associated private key is sign.pem).
	The machine certificate, but not the associated private key, can be downloaded from an mGuard device (or, like <i>sign.pem</i> , provided using a saved file).
	The certificate must be PEM-encoded. It is a text file. It begins with "BEGIN CERTIFICATE".
sign.pem	Private key of the machine certificate. (The corresponding ma-
= private key	chine certificate is <i>sign.crt</i>).
	The private key must be PEM-encoded. The text file begins with "BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY".

Requirements

The configuration profile (e.g. *my_profile.atv*)

- must not contain an existing signature. Lines beginning with "#sig" must be removed (see below).
- must use the Unix convention for line endings (simple "Newline"). If the file uses the Windows convention ("Carriage Return" followed by "Newline"), it must be recoded accordingly.
- must end with an end-of-line character ("Newline").

Creating a signature

You can use the *sign.crt* and *sign.pem* files to create the signature with which the *my_profile.atv* configuration profile is to be signed:

- Use the following Linux command to create a signature: openssl cms -sign -signer sign.crt -inkey sign.pem -in my_profile.atv -binary -out signature.pem -outform PEM
- ↔ The command creates the signature file *signature.pem*.
- Open the *signature.pem* file in a text editor.
- Remove the header ("-----BEGIN CMS-----") and footer ("-----END CMS-----").
- Prefix each line with the text string "#sig" followed by a space character. To do this, use the following Linux command (including all space characters):
 sed '/^-/d; s/^#sig /' signature.pem > signature.txt
- ↔ The modified file is saved in the new *signature.txt* file.

Signing the configuration profile	You can sign the configuration profile <i>my_profile.atv</i> with the created signature (<i>signature.txt</i>).
	Use the following Linux command:
	cat signature.txt >> my profile.atv
	↔ The signature is appended to the configuration profile my_profile.atv and the profile is signed.
	♀ You can now import the signed configuration profile on devices that only accept signed configuration profiles. The corresponding certificates for verification must be installed on these devices (machine certificate sign.crt or corresponding CA certifi- cates that form a chain of trust with sign.crt).
Example: ATV file with	[]
	<pre>VPN_UNIQUE_IDS = "no" VPN_XFRM4_GC_THRESH = "2" WWW_LANGUÃGE = "de" WWW_LEVEL = "10" WWW_TIMEOUT = "1800" // End of configuration profile #sig MIIFcwYJKoZIhvcNAQcCoIIFZDCCBWACAQExDTALBglghkgBZQMEAgEwCwYJKoZI #sig hvcNAQcBoIIC8DCCAuwwggHUoAMCAQICCDVQ08u5bnJBMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUA #sig McOxCzAJBgNVBAYTAmRlMQ4wDAYDVQQLEwVLQ1BDQTEOMAwGA1UEAxMFS0IgQ0Ew #sig hhcNMjQwODI4MDkyNTAwWhcNMzQwODI4MDkyNTAwWjAtMQswCQYDVQQEWJkZTEO #sig MAwGA1UECxMFS0IgQ0ExDjAMBgNVBAMTBUtCIENBMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEF #sig AAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEApjPzB1f6PwugA7an0+I1IS7TmrpDu3j63RGcIxahb8Yf #sig 6SkogxzVvuQ9xzc39G5ByERKjamW7AbgnmnPHEU08d0x1WSA9XMTkTD8cXhlihAS #sig sKkqHvwgR58d19G66ovVhpZtqxKx0eAhsB20vg15cEdnTC7GZrWUgBoXGe0bdvwf #sig 3NePis9b8NkzGByISGfe5L8RqpS2tfdDH01zJzH100BZtbK4iXa8YEUQagjG092D #sig R7AHxCA44ViSp1yXPPutRmKTVv0JvjGU40H03yGkbwIDAQABoxAwDjAMBgNVHRME #sig 1EutiakDhHUT6+1VSSFYj4H9QMKHWRD5B3nmeqm6pwti93teo19VGQnD/5oQM #sig c2mikMfah321XwN0RiyAcki56ss0EAmhXcBBmgG4rbt7RRwy7KU8Ksrauxe0twP1 #sig aIAwg1luDnEEW0TYcOKCOYg7Z55pQHibfP9QVVApfJ/Aw8nFKcyV10HZ2fSQNhpv #sig aZMU5cVugBU2cWd666amYQsb1FtEmKXD1J2iDK4MniUR2uedUxNwbafYqBUGFQ #sig BUtCAQEw0TAtMQswCQYDVQQGEwJkZTEOMAwGA1UECxMFS0IgQ0ExDjAMBgNVBAMT #sig BUCCQEw0TAtMQswCQYDVQQGEwJkZTEOMAwGA1UECxMFS0IgQ0ExDjAMBgNVBAMT #sig BUCCQEw0TAtMQswCQYDVQQGEwJkZTEOMAwGA1UECxMFS0IgQ0ExDjAMBgNVBAMT #sig BUCCQEw0TAtMQswCQYDVQQGEwJkZTEOMAwGA1UECxMFS0IgQ0ExDjAMBgNVBAMT #sig BUCCIENBAgg1UNPLuw5yQTÀLBg1ghkgBZQMEAGgggewGAYJKoZIhvcNAQkDMQsG #sig CSGSIb3DQEHATACBgkqhkiG9w0BCQUXx0cNMjUWMTA5MTMzNTU2WjAvBgkqhkiG #sig w0BCQQxIgQgZYjoHiYvLsdiLwjey6PC2//u0j2v6+KcSZQ0IE1AtdcweQYJKOZI #sig hvcNAQkPMWwajALBg1ghkgBZQMEASowCWYJZIAWUDBAEWMASGCWCCSAFIAwQB</pre>
	<pre>#sig Kw4DAgcwDQYIKoZIhvcNAwICASgwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQAEggEAFildP5txQr5S #sig /7gkM6ORS4Ij2fHUd/+qGY6Bl2l8o60/sVduYBBIG2xGt4OtBUAIormCzScXdMT3 #sig rTBE113G6ec72qU1KpT0c+4eY+gdTVQLqp8qpae1U4sbFk4/SgpzyxT+M2pc0xD3 #sig Jik/yAYfkHuV/P4VsYNM0C0keK4Yb0XYUU85pAhStvCK8p4Fzekd+P9pODCx4VB/ #sig aSozgxhzz37pa1bxSowCMFAhZRgUtgieMuLEyAjQ+C0EwRqZT/zHzFmD3r01721w #sig ZAvPvZGFkGk/C7VSworTa4fQwZNmIn8axP7Sx8CC/kEfrJ15DFtRY5xnDB+WXsNh #sig hVzQQxbnGQ==</pre>

3.4 Cases that require manual adjustment

Some functions available on the previous models (mGuard 8) are not supported by the new devices (mGuard 10) (see).

In the event of a migration via web-based management, a corresponding error message would be displayed when attempting to import such a configuration.

Upload configuration to profile

Either this configuration profile is inconsistent, or this device does not provide all the features to put the Loading system configuration:

Error for QOS_INGRESS_LOCAL_ENABLE="yes": The value is not supported due to hardware restrictions.

Figure 3-1 Example of an error message when importing incompatible configurations

Functions not supported in mGuard 10.5

Table 3-3	Functions not supported in mGuard 10.5
Table 3-3	Functions not supported in mGuard 10.5

Netwo	ork: Interfaces		
– PF	PPoE		
– PF	РТР		
– Se	econdary external interface		
Netwo	ork: Serial interface		
Netwo	Network: GRE tunnel (generic routing encapsulation)		
VPN re	edundancy		
Quality of Service (QoS)			
CIFS I	CIFS Integrity Monitoring		
SEC st	tick		

What do you need to do?

Before you start the migration, you must manually reset the functions specified in to default settings on the old device (mGuard 8). If an error message is shown in the WBM (see above), you can use it as a guide if necessary.

Proceed as described in Section 3.5.

3.5 Resetting variables to the default settings

Management » Configuration Profiles					
Configuration Profiles					
Config	uration Profiles				
Status	Name	Size	Action		
\oslash	Factory Default	37544	⊙ ± /		
~	Migration	50697	± 8		
	Save current configuration to profile	Profile name	Save		
Please note: Only applied charkings will be saved.					
	Upload configuration to profile	Profile name	🗅 🏦 Upload		

The variables that are no longer available on the new device () must be reset to the default settings on the old device before migrating.

If this is not the case, an error message is displayed for an incompatible configuration from which you can ideally derive the variables to be customized.

Alternatively, you can compare the current configuration with the factory default settings of the device. This is done using the "Compare" function
in the web interface.

Once you have identified the corresponding variables, you must manually reset them to the default settings.

To do this, proceed as follows:



First, create a backup copy of your current configuration.

To do this, save the configuration profile on the device and download it or save it to an SD card (see Section 3.3).

- 1. Log into the device via web-based management (WBM).
- 2. Open the menu "Management >> Configuration Profiles".
- 3. Click on the "Edit profile" icon
 to the right of the "Factory Default" configuration profile.
- ↔ The "Factory Default" configuration profile is loaded, but not activated yet.
 NOTE: Do not activate the profile because it will change the network settings of the device and the network access will be lost.
- ↔ All entries that contain changes to the configuration currently used are highlighted in green on the relevant page and in the associated menu path.
- 4. Identify using and, if necessary, the variables that must be reset to the default settings using error messages in the WBM. Note the relevant variables.
- 6. In your configuration currently used, only return the identified variables manually to the default settings.
- 7. Then click on the "Apply" icon 🗖 .
- 8. If necessary, repeat steps 3 7.
- Generation Generation Generation Generation Generation (See Section 3.3).

3.6 Device differences

For more information, see the UM EN HW FL MGUARD 2000/4000 – 110192_en_xx device manual (available at <u>phoenixcontact.net/product/<Item number></u>).

Network ports

Table 3-4	Designation of	the network	ports /	' switch i	ports
-----------	----------------	-------------	---------	------------	-------

mGuard 8	mGuard 10	mGuard 8	mGuard 10
		(Internal)	(Internal)
WAN	XF1	(n/a)	(n/a)
LAN1	XF2	swp2	swp0
FL MGUARD 2105/4305 (K)	()		
LAN2	XF3	swp0	swp1
LAN3	XF4	swp1	swp2
FL MGUARD 2105			
LAN4	XF5	swp3	swp3
FL MGUARD 4305 (KX)			
DMZ	XF5	swp4	dmz0
Not for FL MGUARD 2105/FL MGUARD 4305 (KX)			
LAN5	(n/a)	swp4	(n/a)

Switching inputs/switching outputs (I/Os)

Table 3-5 Switching inputs/switching outputs (I/Os) via Combicon connector

mGuard 8	mGuard 10	
Switching inputs		
(Service 1) CMD1 (I1)	(XG1) CMD1 (I1)	
(Service 2) CMD2 (I2)	(XG1) CMD2 (I2)	
(Service) CMD3 (I3)	(XG1) CMD3 (I3)	
Switching outputs (signal outputs)		
(Service) ACK1 (O1)	(XG2) ACK1 (O1)	
(Service) ACK2 (O2)	(XG2) ACK2 (O2)	
Switching output (alarm output)		
(Contact) FAULT (O4)	(XG2) O3	

Supply voltage

Table 3-6 Power supply via Combicon connector



3.6.1 Added functions that were already available on the old device platform

Variables that were already present on the old device platform but had been removed in the meantime were added again on the new device platform.

Table 3-7 Newly added functions / variables / variable values

New function / variable / value	New function / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with
		sion)
[Deep Packet Inspection / Modbus TCP]	The mGuard device can check packets of in-	10.5.0
Menu : Network Security >> Deep packet Inspec- tion >> Modbus TCP	coming and outgoing Modbus TCP connections (<i>Deep Packet Inspection</i>) and filter them if nec-	
Section: Rule Records		
Variable: various	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
GAI variable: MODBUS_RULESETS.x.FRIENDLY_NAME	No effect.	
MODBUS_RULESETS.x.SET.y.MODBUS_FUNC- TION_CODE	Already configured variable values will be ad- opted.	
MODBUS_RULESETS.x.SET.y.ADDRESS_RANGE		
MODBUS_RULESETS.x.SET.y.TARGET		
MODBUS_RULESETS.x.SET.y.COMMENT		
MODBUS_RULESETS.x.SET.y.LOG		
MODBUS_RULESETS.x.LOG_DEFAULT		
[Deep Packet Inspection / OPC Inspector]	Until now, the OPC Classic network protocol	10.5.0
Menu : Network Security >> Deep packet Inspec- tion >> OPC Inspector	could only be used across firewalls if large port ranges were opened.	
Section: OPC Inspector	Activating the OPC Classic function allows this	
Variable: various	network protocol to be used easily without hav-	
GAI variable: IP_CONNTRACK_OPC	an insecure way.	
IP_CONNTRACK_OPC_SANITY	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
IP_CONNTRACK_OPC_TIMEOUT	No effect.	
	Already configured variable values will be ad- opted.	

MGUARD 10

New function / variable / value	New function / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firmware ver- sion)
[Web access via HTTPS / Server certificate]	Instead of the self-signed web server certificate	10.5.0
Menu : Management >> Web Settings >> Access	pre-installed on the mGuard device, a separate machine certificate can be uploaded to the de-	
Section: HTTPS Web Access	vice and used. The device can use this certifi-	
Variable: HTTPS server certificate	cate to authenticate itself to requesting clients.	
GAI variable: HTTPS_SERVER_CERT_REF	The use of CA certificates in conjunction with a certificate chain of trust is possible.	
In previous firmware versions, the function was not	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
officially available, but could be used as an unsupported expert function.	If an HTTPS server certificate is already in use,	
	the configuration or updating the device.	
	Command on the command line: gaiconfigset HTTPS_SERVER_CERT_REF ""	
	You can now perform the migration/update again and use the certificate again (if it is valid).	
	If no HTTPS server certificate is used, the fol- lowing applies:	
	No effect.	

Table 3-7 Newly added functions / variables / variable values[...]

3.6.2 Newly added functions

Variables have been added to the new device platform that are not available on the old device platform.

Table 3-8Newly added functions / variables

New variable in WBM	New function / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[TCP-Dump] Menu: Support >> Advanced >> TCP Dump Section: TCP Dump Variable (Action):	A packet analysis (<i>tcpdump</i>) can be used to an- alyze the content of network packets that are sent or received via a selected network inter- face.	10.5.0
(1) Starting tcpdump	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
(2) Stopping and downloading tcpdump	No effect.	
[Logging]	In order to comply with basic data protection	10.5.0
Menu : Logging >> Settings	on the device only for a limited period of time.	
Section: Data protection	After a configurable storage period has expired,	
Variable: Maximum retention period for log en- tries (0 = unlimited)	log entries will be deleted automatically from the device.	
GAI variable: LOGGING_MAX_DAYS	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
	No effect	
[OpenVPN Client]	The "Blowfish" encryption algorithm is no	10.5.0
Menu : OpenVPN Client >> Connections >> Tunnel Settings	A total of six AES encryption algorithms can be	
Section: Data Encryption	AES-128-CCM / AES-192-CCM / AES-256-	
GAI variable: OPENVPN_CONNEC- TION.x.VPN_ENCRYPTION	GCM / AES-128-CBC / AES-192-CBC / AES- 256-CBC	
	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
	After migrating a configuration from an older firmware version with the "Blowfish" encryp- tion algorithm configured, the value of the vari- able is set to "AES-256-GCM".	
	The following applies to all other algorithms:	
	The value from the migrated configuration is adopted unchanged. The configured encryption algorithm will not be changed.	

MGUARD 10

Table 3-8Newly added functions / variables [...]

New variable in WBM	New function / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[HTTPS access] Menu: Management >> Web Settings >> Access Section: HTTPS Web Access Variable: Lowest supported TLS version GAI variable: TLS_MIN_VERSION	Some functions of the mGuard device use TLS encryption, e.g.: - Web server (HTTPS access) - OpenVPN Client The used TLS version is negotiated between the remote peers. It is possible that a TLS version will be selected, that is no longer considered secure. To prevent this, it can be specified which TLS version will be accepted by the mGuard device as the lowest TLS version. Connections with lower TLS versions will be rejected by the mGuard device. Default: TLS 1.2	10.5.0
	Migration of older mGuard configurations The variable will be configured with the value TLS 1.0/1.1. All TLS versions from TLS 1.0 are accepted by the mGuard device.	
[LINK Mode] Menu: Network >> Interfaces >> General Section: Network Status / Network Mode Variable: LINK mode GAI variable: ROUTER_MODE_LINK	The mGuard device can use the device "CELLULINK" available from Phoenix Contact to establish a mobile data connection to other networks or the Internet (e.g. via the 4G net- work). If LINK mode is activated, a hyperlink to the web-based management of the device "CELLU- LINK" is displayed in the WBM area of the mGuard device. Migration of older mGuard configurations No effect.	10.5.0

Device replacement and migration

New variable in WBM	New function / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[Web access via HTTPS / Server certificate] Menu: Management >> Web Settings >> Access Section: HTTPS Web Access Variable: HTTPS server certificate GAI variable: HTTPS_SERVER_CERT_REF	Instead of the self-signed web server certifi- cate pre-installed on the mGuard device, a separate machine certificate can be uploaded to the device and used. The device can use this certificate to authenticate itself to requesting clients. The use of CA certificates in conjunction with a certificate chain of trust is possible.	10.5.0
officially available, but could be used as an unsupported expert function.	Migration of older mGuard configurations If an HTTPS server certificate is already in use, its use must be deactivated before migrating the configuration or updating the device.	
	Command on the command line: gaiconfigset HTTPS_SERVER_CERT_REF "" You can now perform the migration/update again and use the certificate again (if it is valid).	
	If no HTTPS server certificate is used, the fol- lowing applies:	
	No effect.	
[OpenVPN Client] Menu: OpenVPN Client >> Connections >> Tunnel	The hash function used to calculate the check- sum can be configured.	10.4.0
Settings Section: Data Encryption Variable: Hash algorithm (HMAC authentication) GAI variable: OPENVPN_CONNECTION.x.VPN AUTH_HMAC	Migration of older mGuard configurations After migrating a configuration from an older firmware version, the value of the newly added variable is set to "SHA-1".	

 Table 3-8
 Newly added functions / variables [...]

MGUARD 10

New variable in WBM	New function / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[Update Server] Menu: Management >> Update >> Update Section: Update Servers Variable: Server certificate GAI variable: PSM_REPOSITORIES.x.RE- MOTE_CERT_REF	To ensure that a secure HTTPS connection is established to the configured update server, a server certificate for the update server can be installed on the mGuard device. This can be used by the mGuard device to check the authenticity of the update server. Migration of older mGuard configurations	10.3.0
	After migrating a configuration from an older firmware version, the value of the newly added variable is set to "Ignore".	
[Alarm Output] Menu: Management >> Service I/O >> Alarm Out- put Section: Operation Supervision Variable: Passwords not configured GAI variable: PASSWORD CHECK	A configurable alarm "Passwords not config- ured" for default passwords that have not been changed (<i>admin/root</i>) has been added to the device. The alarm triggers the alarm output via I/Os and the corresponding FAIL LED.	10.3.0
	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
	After migrating a configuration from an older firmware version, the value of the newly added variable is set to "Supervise".	

Table 3-8 Newly added functions / variables [...]

3.6.3 Changed default settings

In a few cases, the default settings of existing variables on the old and new device platform differ.

Table 3-9Changed default settings

Function	Changed default settings / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[OpenVPN Client] Menu: OpenVPN Client >> Connections >> Tunnel Settings Section: Data Encryption Variable: Encryption algorithm GAI variable: OPENVPN_CONNEC- TION.x.VPN_ENCRYPTION	In the default settings, the encryption algorithm "AES-256-GCM" is used instead of "AES-256-CBC" as before. Migration of older mGuard configurations After migrating a configuration from an older firm- ware version with the "Blowfish" encryption algo- rithm configured, the value of the variable is set to "AES-256-GCM". The following applies to all other algorithms: The value from the migrated configuration is ad- opted unchanged. The configured encryption algo- rithm will not be changed.	10.5.0
[OpenVPN Client] Menu: OpenVPN Client >> Connections >> Tunnel Settings Section: Data Encryption Variable: Hash algorithm (HMAC authenti- cation) GAI variable: OPENVPN_CONNEC- TION.x.VPN_AUTH_HMAC	In the default settings, the hash algorithm "SHA-256" is used instead of "SHA-1" as before. Migration of older mGuard configurations The value from the migrated configuration is ad- opted unchanged. The configured hash algorithm will not be changed.	10.5.0
[E-Mail] Menu: Management >> System Settings >> E-Mail Section: E-Mail Variable: Encryption mode for the e-mail server GAI variable: EMAIL_RELAY_TLS	In the default settings, the encryption algorithm "TLS Encryption" is used instead of "No encryption" as before. Migration of older mGuard configurations The value from the migrated configuration is ad- opted unchanged. The configured encryption mode will not be changed.	10.5.0

MGUARD 10

Table 3-9Changed default settings

Function	Changed default settings / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[Network Address Translation] Menu: Network >> NAT >> Masquerading Section: Network Address Translation/IP Masquerading Variable: Outgoing on interface / From IP	In default settings, a table row/rule with the follow- ing variable values is added: - Outgoing on interface: External - From IP: 0.0.0.0/0 IP masquerading is thus activated for all packets that are routed from the internal network (LAN) to the external network (WAN) (LAN> WAN). Migration of older mGuard configurations The values from the migrated configuration are ad- opted unchanged. A new table row/rule will not be added.	10.3.0
[Network Settings] Menu: Network >> Interfaces >> General Section: Network Mode Variable: Network mode	All devices of the new device generation are delivered in the network mode "Router". The external WAN interface receives its IP configuration via DHCP. In the default setting, however, the firewall prevents remote access to the device via the WAN interface. The device can be accessed from the LAN network via the internal LAN interface under the network address 192.168.1.1/24. Devices connected to the LAN interface can obtain their IP configuration via the DHCP server of the mGuard device. Migration of older mGuard configurations The values from the migrated configuration are adopted unchanged. The configured network mode will not be changed.	10.3.0

3.6.4 Changed variable values

In a few cases, variable values are no longer available on the new device platform and are replaced by other values.

Table 3-10Changed variable values

Function	Changed variable values / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[OpenVPN Client] Menu: OpenVPN Client >> Connections >> Tunnel Settings Section: Data Encryption Variable: Encryption algorithm GAI variable: OPENVPN_CONNEC- TION.x.VPN_ENCRYPTION	 The "Blowfish" encryption algorithm is no longer supported. A total of six AES encryption algorithms can be selected instead of the previous three: AES-128-GCM / AES-192-GCM / AES-256-GCM / AES-128-CBC / AES-192-CBC / AES-256-CBC Migration of older mGuard configurations After migrating a configuration from an older firmware version with the "Blowfish" encryption algorithm configured, the value of the variable is set to "AES-256-GCM". The following applies to all other algorithms: The value from the migrated configuration is adopted unchanged. The configured encryption algorithm will not be changed. 	10.5.0
[Shell access] Menu: Management >> System Settings >> Shell Access Section: Maximum Number of Concurrent Sessions per Role Variable: Admin / Netadmin / Audit GAI variables: SSH_ADMIN_LOGIN_ALLOWED_MAX SSH_NETADMIN_LOGIN_ALLOWED_MAX SSH_AUDIT_LOGIN_ALLOWED_MAX	 The "Maximum Number of Concurrent Sessions per Role" is limited to 10. Migration of older mGuard configurations Applies to all configured values <= 10: The value from the migrated configuration is adopted unchanged. The configured maximum number of concurrent sessions per role will not be changed. The following applies to configured values > 10: After the migration, the value of the variable "Maximum Number of Concurrent Sessions per Role" will be set to 10 in each case. 	10.5.0

MGUARD 10

Table 3-10	Changed variable values[]
------------	---------------------------

Function	Changed variable values / Impact of migration	Firmware
		(Added with firm- ware version)
[Multicast]	To ensure that data in "Static multicast groups" is	10.3.0
Menu: Network >> Ethernet >> Multicast	forwarded correctly to the configured ports, "IGMP snooping" must be activated	
Section: General Multicast Configuration		
Variable: IGMP snooping	Migration of older mGuard configurations	
	After a migration, the value of the variable will be changed as follows:	
	 Enabled: If "Static Multicast Groups" are con- figured. 	
	 Enabled: If "IGMP snooping" is enabled in the old configuration. 	
	 Deactivated: If no "Static Multicast Groups" are configured and "IGMP snooping" is deacti- vated in the old configuration. 	

3.6.5 Modified designation of GAI variables

The designation of some GAI variables will be changed after the migration from mGuard 8.x to mGuard 10.3 or higher.

 Table 3-11
 Modified designations of GAI variables following migration

GAI variable (mGuard 8.x)	GAI variable (mGuard 10.3 or higher)
PORT_MIRROR_RECEIVER	MIRROR_RECEIVER
PHY_SETTING	SWITCHPORT
STATIC_MULTICAST_GROUP	MULTICAST_GROUP

4 Logging / Firewall-Logging

Document-ID: 112008_en_00

Document-Description: AH EN MGUARD LOGGING © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



i

Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Contents of this document

This document describes which events are logged in the log entries of mGuard devices and which abbreviations and log prefixes are used.

4.1	Introduction	106
4.2	Classification into log categories	106
4.3	Log entry (General)	108
4.3.1	User login/logout	108
4.3.2	Change user password	110
4.3.3	Change configuration	111
4.3.4	Use configuration profiles (ATV / ECS)	112
4.3.5	Execute action	113
4.3.6	Create firewall user	114
4.3.7	Insert or remove ECS/SD card	115
4.3.8	Perform an update	116
4.3.9	Firewall redundancy	117
4.3.10	Remove / connect network cable	118
4.3.11	DHCP (Server)	119
4.3.12	DHCP (Client)	120
4.3.13	Rebooting the device	121
4.3.14	Uptime (time stamp)	122
4.4	Log prefix (Firewall)	123
4.4.1	Device and routing Firewall	123
4.4.2	Abbreviations	124
4.4.3	Log-Identifier	126
4.4.4	Limitation of access (fw-throttle)	127
4.4.5	Anti-Spoofing (fw-antispoofing)	128
4.4.6	Consistency check (fw-unclean)	129
4.4.7	Connection tracking (fw-invalid)	130
4.4.8	Remote access (fw-ssh-, fw-https-, fw-snmp-, fw-ntp-access)	131
4.4.9	Firewall (fw-incoming, fw-outgoing)	132
4.4.10	DMZ firewall (fw-dmz-incoming, fw-dmz-outgoing)	133
4.4.11	Firewall rule records (fw-ruleset)	134
4.4.12	User firewall (ufw)	135
4.4.13	IP- and Portforwarding (fw-portforwarding)	136
4.4.14	IPsec VPN firewall (fw-vpn-in, fw-vpn-out)	137
4.4.15	OpenVPN firewall, -forwarding (fw-openvpn-in, -out, -openvpn-portfw)	138
4.4.16	DoS protection: SYN flood protection (fw-SYN-flood)	139
4.4.17	DoS protection: ICMP flood protection (fw-ICMP-flood)	139
4.4.18	Max. size "ICMP Echo Request packets" (fw-ICMP-maxlen)	140

4.1 Introduction

The mGuard device logs general system statuses, configuration changes and actions performed on or by the device.

This includes actions performed by the mGuard firewall, user logins and logouts and changes to the device configuration.

The log entries are identified by specific designations and log prefixes. This document briefly describes the log entries and the log prefixes. The aim is to facilitate the interpretation of log entries.

4.2 Classification into log categories

The log entries used on mGuard devices can be divided into categories to simplify matters. The following table provides an overview of important log categories and describes which events are logged in each case.

Table 4-1 Categories of log entries (examples)

Category	Detail
Common	
User (Login/Logout)	 Login/logout (HTTPS / SSH / SNMP): Login of users Login of firewall users Login error Manual logout / logout via timeout
User administration	 Change password Configure, change or delete user firewall template Create, change or delete firewall user
Change configuration / Configuration profiles	 Change configuration (including parameters) Create or delete configuration profile Upload or download configuration profile Apply configuration profile Save configuration to SD card or load/apply from SD card.
Certificates	- Upload or delete certificates
Hardware changes	 Insert or remove SD card Connect or disconnect network cable
Connectivity	 Network configuration received via DHCP Network cable removed / connected
Update	Perform firmware updateAdd, change or delete update server
Remote logging (syslog)	 Configure, activate or deactivate remote syslog server connection
Redundancy	 Operate two mGuard devices in firewall redundancy mode

Category	Detail		
Network Security	Network Security		
Firewall	 Firewall rule applies and is applied (logging must be activated) 		
	 Firewall rule set is applied (logging must be activated) 		
	 Unknown connection attempt (logging must be activated) 		
	 Create, change or delete firewall rule 		
	 Configure, change or delete user firewall template 		
	 Anti-spoofing measures 		
	 DoS protection measures 		
	 Measures in the course of consistency checks 		
IPsec VPN			
IPsec VPN	 IPsec VPN connection is established or terminated 		
	 Connection (setup) error 		
OpenVPN Client			
OpenVPN	 OpenVPN connection is being established or terminated 		
	 Connection (setup) error 		
DHCP Server/Relay			
DHCP	 Network configuration assigned to a network client via DHCP 		
SNMP/LLDP			
SNMP	 Monitor or manage SNMP device via SNMP 		
LDAP	 Determine or send information about the network infrastructure via LLDP 		
Dynamic Routing			
OSPF	 Distribute OSPF routing information via OSPF protocol 		

 Table 4-1
 [...]Categories of log entries (examples)

4.3 Log entry (General)

4.3.1 User login/logout

Web based management (web interface)

Log entry	Description
Webinterface	A user is logged on or off via the WBM. Authentication takes place
action	on the mouard device directly or via a RADIUS server.
	Unsuccessful login attempts and automatic logouts are also logged.
	If the user is logged in and authenticated using the RADIUS server, the user name configured on the RADIUS server appears as the user name.
	Unsuccessful login attempts and manual logout or logout after a session timeout are also logged.
	The logon and logoff of firewall users is also logged.

Example:

2025-03-06_13:05:32.24439 Webinterface : Accepted login for 'user-bob' role 'ad- min' from 192.168.1.55 by Web
2025-03-06_13:06:32.24439 Webinterface: Logout for 'user-bob' role 'admin' from 192.168.1.55 by timeout
2025-03-06_13:07:32.24439 Webinterface : Failed login for '*******' role '******' from 192.168.1.55 by Web
2025-05-05_10:23:19.72490 action : user-fred:admin performed the action 'us- erfw/login' via Webinterface
2025-05-05_10:23:19.72586 Webinterface : Accepted login for firewall user user- fred' from 192.168.1.55
2025-05-05_10:23:44.91426 action : Technician_Bob:admin performed the action 'userfw/logout' via Webinterface
2025-05-05_10:23:44.91568 Webinterface : Logout for firewall user 'user-fred' from 192.168.1.55
Shell access (sshd)

Log entry	Description
sshd	A user is logged on or off via the shell access of the mGuard device.
inno-sshlimitd	Unsuccessful login attempts and manual logouts or logouts after a session timeout are also logged.

Example:

2025-03-06_13:21:03.24439 **sshd[28654]**: Accepted password for admin from 192.168.1.55 port 53721 ssh2

2025-03-06_13:21:04.00270 inno-sshlimitd: accepting new connection at fd 6

2025-03-06_13:21:05.00315 inno-sshlimitd: allow session 1 of maximum 4 for role admin (class 1) at fd 6 $\,$

2025-03-06_13:21:09.00896 sshd[28659]: session start for user 'admin'

2025-03-06_13:24:10.00896 **sshd[28666]**: Closing connection for admin from 192.168.1.55 port 53716

2025-03-06_13:24:10.00896 **sshd[28766]** Failed password for admin from 192.168.1.55 port 53933 ssh2

4.3.2 Change user password

Log entry	Description
maid	A user password is changed.
usermod	

Example:

2025-05-05_10:03:40.39609 **maid**[12436]: User 'admin' performed a configuration change with role 'admin':

2025-05-05_10:03:40.39628 **maid**[12436]: WWW_PASSWORD_RAW set to '******' 2025-05-05_10:03:40.42302 **usermod**[23853]: change user 'admin' password

4.3.3 Change configuration

Log entry	Description
maid	A user makes a configuration change. The changed parameters are logged.
	If the user is logged in and authenticated using the RADIUS server, the user name configured on the RADIUS server appears as the user name.

Example:

2025-03-06_13:41:43.27927 maid[12341]: User 'admin' performed a configuration change with role 'admin': 2025-03-06_13:41:43.27947 maid[12341]: NTP_SERVERS new row 0 2025-03-06_13:41:43.27984 maid[12341]: NTP_SERVERS:0.NTP_SERVER set to 'pool.ntp.org' 2025-03-06_13:41:43.27998 maid[12341]: NTP_SERVERS:0.PREFER_VPN set to 'no' 2025-03-06_13:41:43.28073 maid[12341]: NTP_SERVERS new row 1 2025-03-06_13:41:43.28087 maid[12341]: NTP_SERVERS:1.NTP_SERVER set to 'pool.ntp.net'

2025-03-06_13:41:43.28116 maid[12341]: NTP_SERVERS:1.PREFER_VPN set to 'no'

Log entry	Description
action	A configuration profile is created, uploaded, downloaded or ap-
service-ihald	plied.
ECS-save	

4.3.4 Use configuration profiles (ATV / ECS)

Example:

As ATV profile

2025-05-05_09:47:08.18954 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'pro-file/save' via Webinterface

2025-05-05_09:47:44.33517 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'pro-file/download' via Webinterface

2025-05-05_09:49:50.58022 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'profile/up-load' via Webinterface

2025-05-05_09:50:18.32148 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'profile/restore' via Webinterface

On ECS/SD card

Create / Save

2025-05-05_12:38:43.92085 **service-ihald**: INFO: Writing the configuration to the external config storage.

2025-05-05_12:38:47.00398 syslog: Generic SD card found.

2025-05-05_12:38:47.03468 ECS-save: saved configuration

2025-05-05_12:38:47.03918 **service-ihald**: INFO: Finished writing the configuration to the external config storage.

2025-05-05_12:38:47.06146 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'ecs/save' via Webinterface

Hochladen / Anwenden

2025-05-05_12:42:03.69947 **service-ihald**: INFO: The configuration from the external config storage differs from the device.

2025-05-05_12:42:03.71027 **ECS-load**: Configuration restored from external config storage.

2025-05-05_12:42:03.82098 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'ecs/load' via Webinterface

4.3.5 Execute action

Log entry	Description
action	An action is executed by a user with a specific user role (user name:role).
	If the user is logged in and authenticated using the RADIUS server, the user name configured on the RADIUS server appears as the user name.

Example:

2025-03-06_13:44:29.56656 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'tools/snap-shot' via Webinterface

2025-03-06_13:45:09.97690 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'tools/tcp-dump-start' via Webinterface

2025-05-05_10:26:34.81534 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'up-date/patches' via Webinterface

4.3.6 Create firewall user

Log entry	Description
maid	A firewall user is configured or an already configured firewall user is changed or adapted.

2025-05-05_10:14:55.23385 maid [12435]: User 'admin' performed a configuration change with role 'admin':
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23403 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE new row 0
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23420 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_COMMENT set to "
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23436 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEMPLATE_EN-ABLED set to 'yes'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23453 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_NAME set to 'Firewall-User-01'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23467 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_RULE:0.COMMENT set to ''
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23483 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_RULE:0.DST_IP set to '0.0.0.0/0'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23496 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_RULE:0.DST_PORT set to 'any'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23512 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_RULE:0.LOG set to 'no'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23526 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_RULE:0.PROTO set to 'all'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23539 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_RULE:0.SRC_PORT set to 'any'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23556 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEMPLATE_S-RC_IP set to '%authorized_ip'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23570 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEMPLATE_TIM-EOUT set to '28800'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23651 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEM- PLATE_TOUT_TYPE set to 'static'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23667 maid [12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.TEMPLATE_US- ERS:0.USERNAME set to 'Technician_01'
2025-05-05_10:14:55.23686 maid[12435]: USERFW_TEMPLATE:0.VPN_CONN_REF set to "

4.3.7 Insert or remove ECS/SD card

Log entry	Description
kernel	An SD card is inserted or removed from the device.
service-ihald	

2025-05-05_09:45:59.26220 kernel : [245.191375] mmc0: new high speed SDHC card at address 59b4
2025-05-05_09:45:59.26578 kernel : [245.193484] mmcblk0: mmc0:59b4 SDC 7.51 GiB
2025-05-05_09:45:59.26631 kernel : [245.195280] mmcblk0: p1
2025-05-05_09:46:00.71116 service-ihald : INFO: An external config storage me- dium was inserted.
2025-05-05_09:43:51.42165 kernel : [117.347900] mmc0: card 59b4 removed

4.3.8 **Perform an update**

Log entry	Description
action	An update or attempt to update the firmware is carried out. Any er-
psm-sanitize	rors that occur are also logged.

Example:

2025-05-14_07:09:14.96415 **action**: admin:admin performed the action 'update/major' via Webinterface

2025-05-14_07:09:15.03413 **psm-sanitize**: psm-sanitize: info: all packages installed completely.

2025-05-14_07:09:15.04755 **psm-sanitize**: psm-sanitize: info: installing new pack-age set "10.6.0-pre19-beta06.default"...

2025-05-14_07:09:15.63286 **psm-sanitize**: psm-wget: download failed for URL https://***@update.innominate.com//aarch64/major/10.6.0.default: HTTP/1.1 404 Not Found

2025-05-14_07:09:15.64362 psm-sanitize: psm-install: fatal: download of package set "10.6.0.default" failed (107)

2025-05-14_07:09:15.65645 **psm-sanitize**: psm-sanitize: info: psm-install 10.6.0.default failed: 107

2025-05-14_07:09:15.66465 psm-sanitize: psm-sanitize: info: done.

2025-05-14_07:09:15.66947 psm-sanitize: psm-sanitize: info: running psm-clean...

2025-05-14_07:09:17.98191 psm-sanitize: psm-clean: info: done.

4.3.9 Firewall redundancy

Log entry	Description
ham-ssv / ham-vic	An event occurs when two mGuard devices are used as a redun-
ham-av	dancy pair - with firewall redundancy activated (e.g. switching
conntrackd	ously active device lacks connectivity).
pluto	

[]
2025-05-14_08:03:49.48428 ham-ssv : INFO transitioned from outdated to on standby because availability is failed totally, connectivity is successful, replication is not unknown (outdated)
2025-05-14_08:03:49.48871 ham-ssv : INFO transitioned from on_standby to be- comes_active because availability is failed totally, connectivity is not unknown (suc- cessful), replication is not unknown (outdated)
2025-05-14_08:03:49.49177 ham-vic : INFO enabled IP forwarding and other condi- tions
2025-05-14_08:03:49.49193 ham-ac-int: AC INFO ham-ac(5703,eth1) sending CARP messages and listening to them
2025-05-14_08:03:49.49207 ham-ac-ext1 : AC INFO ham-ac(5723,eth0) sending CARP messages and listening to them
2025-05-14_08:03:49.50734 conntrackd : [Wed May 14 08:03:49 2025] (pid=32161) [notice] committing all external caches
2025-05-14_08:03:49.51356 conntrackd : [Wed May 14 08:03:49 2025] (pid=32161) [notice] Committed 115 new entries
2025-05-14_08:03:49.51376 conntrackd : [Wed May 14 08:03:49 2025] (pid=32161) [notice] commit has taken 0.006242 seconds
2025-05-14_08:03:49.52332 conntrackd : [Wed May 14 08:03:49 2025] (pid=32161) [notice] flushing caches
2025-05-14_08:03:49.53259 conntrackd : [Wed May 14 08:03:49 2025] (pid=32161) [notice] resync with master conntrack table
2025-05-14_08:03:49.54625 conntrackd : [Wed May 14 08:03:49 2025] (pid=32161) [notice] sending bulk update
2025-05-14_08:03:49.84886 ham-ssv : INFO sigalrm (timeout)
2025-05-14_08:03:49.84905 ham-ssv : INFO transitioned from becomes_active to active because replication is not 'received final' (outdated), timeout
2025-05-14_08:03:49.85119 ham-vic: INFO enabled virtual interface eth1.vif
2025-05-14_08:03:49.85238 pluto : pluto[21806]: HA: switching to 'active'
2025-05-14_08:03:49.85242 pluto : pluto[21806]: HA: I am active now
2025-05-14_08:03:49.87510 ham-vic: INFO Kernel Proxy ARP enabled
[]

Log entry	Description
kernel	A network cable is removed from or connected to the device.
service mauman	

4.3.10 Remove / connect network cable

Example:

2025-06-10_09:50:19.27287 **kernel**: [5330.215135] mvneta d0030000.ethernet eth0: Link is Down

2025-06-10_09:50:19.37295 **service-mauman**: [011] Running service loop because an interface changed

2025-06-10_09:50:23.36572 **kernel**: [5334.308092] mvneta d0030000.ethernet eth0: Link is Up - 1Gbps/Full - flow control off

2025-06-10_09:50:23.46578 **service-mauman**: [011] Running service loop because an interface changed

4.3.11 DHCP (Server)

Log entry	Description
dhcp-int	A network configuration is assigned to a network client by the
dhcp-ext	mGuard DHCP server via DHCP.

2025-06-11_09:19:06.72032 dhcp-int: udhcpd: started, v1.36.1
2025-06-11_09:19:14.35471 dhcp-int : udhcpd: sending OFFER to 192.168.100.223
2025-06-11_09:19:14.37093 dhcp-int : udhcpd: sending ACK to 192.168.100.223

4.3.12 DHCP (Client)

Log entry	Description
dhclient	The network configuration is requested from a DHCP server and received from it.

2025-06-11_09:00:41.65347 dhclient: udhcpc: Recieved a link-up event, exiting
2025-06-11_09:00:41.65351 dhclient:
2025-06-11_09:00:41.65953 dhclient: udhcpc: started, v1.36.1
2025-06-11_09:00:41.65957 dhclient: udhcpc: Will send DHCP requests.
2025-06-11_09:00:41.68587 dhclient: trigger: 'ifchange ext1'
2025-06-11_09:00:41.70078 dhclient: udhcpc: broadcasting discover
2025-06-11_09:00:41.75383 service-mauman: [011] Running service loop because an interface changed
2025-06-11_09:00:41.81462 dhclient : udhcpc: broadcasting select for 192.168.178.38, server 192.168.100.1
2025-06-11_09:00:41.86462 dhclient : udhcpc: lease of 192.168.100.38 obtained from 192.168.100.1, lease time 864000
2025-06-11_09:00:41.90523 dhclient : trigger: 'ifchange ext1'

4.3.13 Rebooting the device

Log entry	Description
ham-ssv	The device is restarted by a user or due to an error.
	The complete log entries for this event can only be analyzed on the syslog server, as the events on the device are deleted after a restart.

2025-06-11T15:21:52.145364+02:00 192.168.1.1 2025-06-11_15: 21:23.92907 <13>Jun 11 15:21:23 ham-ssv : INFO sigterm (request to terminate)
2025-06-11T15:21:52.145364+02:00 192.168.1.1 2025-06-11_15: 21:23.92959 <13>Jun 11 15:21:23 ham-ssv : INFO terminating
2025-06-11T15:21:52.146846+02:00 192.168.1.1 2025-06-11_15: 21:23.92997 <13>Jun 11 15:21:23 ham-ssv : INFO terminated
[]

4.3.14 Uptime (time stamp)

To check on an external syslog server, for example, whether the transfer of log entries is taking place as desired and whether log entries are being transferred regularly, a log entry with the prefix "uptime-audit" is created approximately every 30 minutes and sent to the syslog server. The log entry shows the current time that has passed since the system start of the mGuard device (uptime).

Log entry	Description
uptime-audit	Automatic time stamp to check the logging function of the device.

2025-03-22_06:17:45.26984 uptime-audit : UPTIME: 1 day, 23:51
2025-03-22_06:46:45.27963 uptime-audit : UPTIME: 2 days, 20 min
2025-03-23_09:50:45.81252 uptime-audit : UPTIME: 3 days, 3:24

4.4 Log prefix (Firewall)

4.4.1 Device and routing Firewall

Packets that are directed to the mGuard device or must pass through the firewall are checked in the following order:



Figure 4-1Packet inspection of packets that pass through a firewallFurther details on package control are described in the following chapters.

4.4.2 Abbreviations

Table 4-2Abbreviations used in log entries

Abbreviation	Description
IN (Router mode)	Incoming interface
PHYSIN (Stealth mode)	eth0: external interface / br0 (Stealth mode)
	eth1: internal interface / br0 (Stealth mode)
	tun(x): Interface for each active OpenVPN connection
OUT (Router mode)	Outgoing interface
PHYSOUT (Stealth mode)	eth0: external interface / br0 (Stealth mode)
	eth1: internal interface / br0 (Stealth mode)
	tun(x): Interface for each active OpenVPN connection
MAC	This information is always displayed, regardless of the protocol, if the MAC address of the remote station is known.
act	Action performed for package: DROP, REJECT or ACCEPT
SRC	Source IP address
DST	Destination IP address
LEN	Total length of the IP packet in bytes
TOS	Type of services , Field <i>Type</i>
PREC	Type of services , Field <i>Precedence</i>
TTL	Remaining lifetime (time to live) in hops
ID	Unique ID of the IP datagram, which is shared by all fragments if they are fragmented.
DF	Flag "Don't fragment" is active.
CE	Flag "Reserved fragment"
MF	Flag "More fragments" (reference to further following fragments of the same package)
PROTO	Name or number of the protocol (e.g. ARP or TCP, ICMP)
SPT	Source port (TCP and UDP)
DPT	Destination port (TCP and UDP)
WINDOW	The size of the TCP Receive Window. (Only for TCP)
[FLAGS]	If the TCP protocol is used, the TCP flags (e.g. SYN) are also displayed.
URG ACK PSH RST SYN FIN CWR ECE	URG = Urgent flag ACK = Acknowledgement flag PSH = Push flag RST = Reset flag SYN = SYN flag (wird nur beim Aufbau von TCP-Verbindungen ausgetauscht) FIN = FIN flag (wird nur bei der Trennung von TCP-Verbindungen ausgetauscht) CWR = Peer has reduced "congestion window" (WINDOW) ECE = Peer supports "explicit congestion notification" in the event of overload
SPI	Used SPI (only for ESP protocoll)
URGP	The Urgent Pointer enables urgent data transmissions of the "out of band" type.
MARK	An internally used marker on the data packet.

CTMARK	An internally used marker on the connection tracking entry belonging to the data packet.
SEQ	ID of the packet for ICMP Echo and Echo Reply (Ping)
CODE	ICMP code (only ICMP)
TYPE	ICMP type (only ICMP)
ROWID1 / ROWID2	IDs of the associated IPsec connection and the associated IPsec tunnel (if the packet goes into an IPsec tunnel or came out of one).
GATEWAY	Suggested gateway for ICMP " <i>Redirect</i> ".
MTU	Suggested MTU for ICMP "Fragmentation Needed".
REQUEST	Request (ARP only)
REPLY	Response (ARP only)
NAK	<i>Negative acknowledgement</i> - The request could not be processed successfully (ARP only).
REPLY_MAC	Resolved MAC address (ARP only)
CODE	Other " <i>operation code</i> " for ARP, if it is neither REQUEST, nor REPLY, nor NAK. For example with reverse ARP.

Table 4-2 Abbreviations used in log entries

4.4.3 Log-Identifier

Example of a firewall log entry:

```
2025-03-21_09:02:08.11705 firewall: fw-incoming-2-3189b8c7-8002-1315-805d-
a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:15:17:20:df:7d
SRC=10.1.80.200 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127
ID=26695 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=23695 DPT=5201 SEQ=107412944 ACK=0 WIN-
DOW=65535 SYN URGP=0
```

Each log entry begins with the time stamp and the log identifier.

Time stamp (Example):

2025-03-08_17:25:22.07497

Log Identifier (Example):

The Log Identifier consists of the following elements in the following format:

<Log prefix>-<Rule number>-<Log ID>

Example: fw-incoming-1-3189b8c7-8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11

Log prefix	The log prefix indicates in which area or at which step an action took place during the analysis of the data traffic by the firewall.
Rule number	The rule number indicates which configured firewall rule caused the log entry. <rule number=""> = 0 means that the log entry was caused by a standard firewall rule.</rule>
Log ID	Each type of configured firewall (e.g. incoming rules, outgoing rules, SSH or HTTPS remote access) has its own unique log ID.

The log identifier can be used in the "Logging>> View logs" menu to find the firewall rule that caused the log entry.

i

The time zone configured in the "Administration >> System settings >> Time and date" menu only affects the time stamps displayed in the web interface.

If you use remote logging, the time stamp is displayed in UTC format on the remote syslog server. This makes it easier to compare the log entries if you are using a central syslog server to record and analyze the log entries of various devices located in different time zones.

4.4.4 Limitation of access (fw-throttle)

This check is carried out for all packets that are received via the external interface.

Log prefix	Description
fw-throttle	The firewall limits the permitted connections for remote access to the mGuard device. The permitted number varies for different pro- tocols. If the permitted number of connections is exceeded, new connections are rejected and the packets are discarded.

4.4.5 Anti-Spoofing (fw-antispoofing)

This check is carried out for all packets that are received via the external or DMZ interface.

Packets are rejected and dropped if their sender IP address belongs to the network of an interface other than the one on which they were received.

(For example, if packets are received on the external interface whose sender IP is in the internal network).

The log prefix **fw-antispoofing-** is followed by the extensions *ext1* and *dmz* if the packet was received via the WAN or DMZ interface (*ext1*, *dmz*).

Log prefix	Description
fw-antispoofing	Packets are rejected and dropped if their sender IP address be- longs to the network of an interface other than the one on which they were received.
	(For example, if packets are received on the external interface whose sender IP is in the internal network).

2025-03-21_10:13:42.19680 firewall: fw-antispoofing-ext1-0- act=DROP IN=eth0
MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=255.255.255.255 LEN=59
TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=128 ID=56636 PROTO=UDP SPT=1004 DPT=1003
LEN=39 CTMARK=100000

4.4.6 Consistency check (fw-unclean)

The firewall performs a consistency check if the "Enable TCP/UDP/ICMP consistency checks" option is activated in the "Network security >> Packet filter>> Advanced" menu.

The consistency check is carried out for the IP headers of all IP packets. For the TCP, UDP and ICMP protocols, the headers of the respective protocol are also checked for invalid values (e.g. invalid checksum, ports or TCP flags).

Log prefix	Description
fw-unclean-input	Packet that was sent directly to an interface of the mGuard.
fw-unclean-out- put	Packet generated by the mGuard. This log prefix should not actually occur, but is included for the sake of completeness.
fw-unclean-for- ward	Packet that would pass through the firewall (routing).

Example:

2024-03-31_09:01:18.80548 firewall: **fw-unclean-input**-0- act=DROP IN=eth0 OUT= MAC=00:0c:be:02:20:27:00:13:20:48:d4:e6:08:00 SRC=10.1.0.64 DST=10.1.80.100 LEN=40 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=128 ID=1364 PROT0=TCP SPT=1234 DPT=0 SEQ=0 ACK=0 WINDOW=1500 RES=0x00 SYN URGP=0

2025-03-21_08:41:17.97343 firewall: **fw-unclean-forward**-0- act=DROP IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:6a SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.200 LEN=48 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=63 ID=292 PROTO=TCP SPT=40008 DPT=80 SEQ=811466752 ACK=0 WINDOW=512 SYN URGP=0

4.4.7 Connection tracking (fw-invalid)

Connection tracking is carried out for all packets.

fw-invalid occurs when the firewall discards a network packet for which no suitable connection is entered in the *connection tracking* table of the mGuard device. This means that the packet cannot be related to an existing connection.

In addition, the packet does not create a new entry in the *connection tracking* table, as the connection is blocked or dropped by a firewall rule.

If the packet belongs to an existing connection, TCP packets are also checked to see whether the set TCP flags meet expectations and whether the sequence number is within the currently accepted window. If one of these checks fails, the packet is discarded and an entry with the prefix *fw-invalid* is generated.

Log prefix	Description
fw-invalid-input	Packet that was sent directly to an interface of the mGuard device.
fw-invalid-output	Packet generated by the mGuard device. This log prefix should not actually occur, but is included for the sake of completeness.
fw-invalid-forward	Packet that would pass through the firewall.

Example:

2025-03-21_08:04:40.08134 firewall: **fw-invalid-input**-0- act=DROP IN=eth0 MAC=00:0c:be:04:00:58 SRC=10.1.80.123 DST=10.1.80.100 LEN=40 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=54116 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=37645 DPT=5201 SEQ=3746596578 ACK=16777216 WINDOW=0 ACK RST URGP=0

2025-03-21_08:22:49.49289 firewall: **fw-invalid-output**-0- act=DROP OUT=eth0 MAC= SRC=10.1.80.100 DST=10.1.80.200 LEN=104 TOS=0x08 PREC=0x40 TTL=64 ID=54569 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=22 DPT=22841 SEQ=1343772416 ACK=16777216 WINDOW=501 ACK PSH URGP=0 UID=0 GID=0 MARK=800

2025-03-21_08:06:12.08142 firewall: **fw-invalid-forward**-0- act=DROP IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.123 LEN=40 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=466 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=5201 DPT=37645 SEQ=584616543 ACK=16777216 WINDOW=53217 ACK FIN URGP=0

4.4.8 Remote access (fw-ssh-, fw-https-, fw-snmp-, fw-ntpaccess)

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-ssh-, fw-https-, fw-snmp-** and **fw-ntp-access** are caused by remote access rules for SSH, HTTPS, SNMP and NTP access from the external network (if "Logging" has been enabled):

- SSH remote access: Menu "Administration>> System Settings>> Shell Access"
- HTTPS remote access: Menu "Administration>> Web Settings>> Access"
- SNMP remote access: Menu "Administration>> SNMP>> Query"
- NTP remote access: Menu "Administration>> System Settings>> Time and Date"

Log prefix	Description
fw-ssh-access	A remote access rule (shell access / SSH) applies to an incoming SSH connection that terminates on the device.
fw-https-access	A remote access rule (web access / HTTPS) applies to an incoming HTTPS connection that terminates on the device.
fw-snmp-access	A remote access rule (SNMP access / SNMP) applies to an incom- ing SNMP connection that terminates on the device.
fw-ntp-access	A remote access rule (NTP access / NTP) applies to an incoming NTP connection that terminates on the device.

Example:

2025-03-13_11:03:03.62955 firewall: **fw-ssh-access**-1-1dd08637-31d0-1f7fb283-000cbe000d32 act=REJECT IN=eth0 MAC=d4:d8:53:b2:6d:62 SRC=192.168.178.32 DST=192.168.178.128 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=128 ID=60064 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=55219 DPT=22 SEQ=1601988361 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 CTMARK=100030

2025-03-13_11:04:38.28569 firewall: **fw-https-access**-1-1dd0864d-31d0-1f7fb283-000cbe000d32 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 MAC=d4:d8:53:b2:6d:62 SRC=192.168.178.32 DST=192.168.178.128 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=128 ID=60722 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=65104 DPT=443 SEQ=2949231819 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 CTMARK=100030

2025-03-13_10:57:21.38954 firewall: **fw-ntp-access**-1-1dd08618-31d0-1f7fb283-000cbe000d32 act=DROP IN=eth0 MAC=00:0c:be:00:10:fc SRC=192.168.178.40 DST=192.168.178.128 LEN=76 TOS=0x18 PREC=0xA0 TTL=64 ID=20909 DF PROTO=UDP SPT=123 DPT=123 LEN=56 CTMARK=100030

4.4.9 Firewall (fw-incoming, fw-outgoing)

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-incoming** and **fw-outgoing** are caused by configured incoming and outgoing firewall rules (if "Logging" has been enabled).

- Incoming rules: Menu "Network Security>> Packet Filter>> Inbound Rules"
- Outgoing rules: Menu "Network Security>> Packet Filter>> Outgoing Rules"

Log prefix	Description
fw-incoming	An incoming rule applies to a connection that is established from external to internal (WAN> LAN).
fw-outgoing	An outgoing rule applies to a connection that is established from internal to external (LAN> WAN).

Example:

2025-03-21_09:01:46.32490 firewall: **fw-incoming**-1-3189b8c7-8002-1315-805da8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:15:17:20:df:7d SRC=10.1.80.200 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=26694 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=390

2025-03-21_09:02:08.11705 firewall: **fw-incoming**-2-3189b8c7-8002-1315-805da8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:15:17:20:df:7d SRC=10.1.80.200 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=26695 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=23695 DPT=5201 SEQ=107412944 ACK=0 WIN-DOW=65535 SYN URGP=0

2025-03-21_08:59:32.91681 firewall: **fw-outgoing**-1-3189b8c8-8002-1315-805da8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.200 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=29288 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=39

2025-03-21_09:00:04.37373 firewall: **fw-outgoing**-2-3189b8c8-8002-1315-805da8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.200 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=29291 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=51582 DPT=5201 SEQ=1243586400 ACK=0 WIN-DOW=65535 SYN URGP=0

4.4.10 DMZ firewall (fw-dmz-incoming, fw-dmz-outgoing)

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-dmz-incoming-lan** and **fw-dmz-outgoing-lan** as well as **fw-dmzincoming-wan** and **fw-dmz-outgoing-wan** are caused by configured incoming and outgoing DMZ firewall rules (if "Logging" has been enabled)).

- DMZ rules: Menu "Network Security >> Packet Filter>> DMZ"

Log prefix	Description
fw-dmz-incoming-wan	A firewall rule applies to a connection (WAN> DMZ).
fw-dmz-outgoing-wan	A firewall rule applies to a connection (DMZ> WAN).
fw-dmz-incoming-lan	A firewall rule applies to a connection (LAN> DMZ).
fw-dmz-outgoing-lan	A firewall rule applies to a connection (DMZ> LAN).

Example:

2025-03-25_13:24:35.44775 firewall: **fw-dmz-incoming-wan**-1-38db7ed8-85b6-1760-a630-000cbe00105c act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=dmz0 MAC=d4:d8:53:b2:6d:62 SRC=192.168.100.32 DST=192.168.3.128 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=29021 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=15028

2025-03-25_13:27:08.21530 firewall: **fw-dmz-outgoing-wan**-1-38db7eda-85b6-1760-a630-000cbe00105c act=ACCEPT IN=dmz0 OUT=eth0 MAC=00:0c:be:00:0d:32 SRC=192.168.3.128 DST=192.168.100.1 LEN=84 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=63 ID=27183 DF PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=17879 SEQ=4

2025-03-25_13:45:16.95125 firewall: **fw-dmz-outgoing-lan**-1-38db7edb-85b6-1760-a630-000cbe00105c act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=dmz0 PHYSIN=swp0 MAC=d4:d8:53:b2:6d:62 SRC=192.168.100.32 DST=192.168.3.128 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=30850 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=16278

2025-03-25_13:46:39.31935 firewall: **fw-dmz-outgoing-lan**-1-38db7edb-85b6-1760-a630-000cbe00105c act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=dmz0 PHYSIN=swp0 MAC=d4:d8:53:b2:6d:62 SRC=192.168.100.32 DST=192.168.3.128 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=30980 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=16366

4.4.11 Firewall rule records (fw-ruleset)

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-ruleset** are caused by configured firewall rules that have been defined in firewall rule records (if logging has been enabled in the corresponding incoming/outgoing firewall rule).

- Rule records: Menu "Network Security>> Packet Filter>> Rule Records"

Log prefix	Description
fw-ruleset	A rule that is defined in an active and corresponding firewall rule record applies to a connection.

Example:

2025-03-25_10:50:50.60941 firewall: **fw-ruleset**_MAIv167032083-1-108ee44bc0c7-19cd-8938-000cbe00105c act=DROP IN=br0 OUT=br0 PHYSIN=eth0 PHYSOUT=swp0 MAC=d4:d8:53:b2:6d:62 SRC=192.168.1.32 DST=192.168.1.128 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=128 ID=9188 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=10364 MARK=c

2025-05-09_10:55:53.90349 firewall: **fw-ruleset**_MAIv226940804-1-1c55a7b6c861-1037-a74f-000cbe00105c act=ACCEPT IN=br0 OUT=br0 PHYSIN=eth0 PHYSOUT=swp0 MAC=bc:e9:2f:c3:60:06 SRC=192.168.1.37 DST=192.168.1.255 LEN=241 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=64 ID=25467 DF PROTO=UDP SPT=138 DPT=138 LEN=221 MARK=10000 CTMARK=100000

4.4.12 User firewall (ufw)

Log entries with the prefix **ufw** are caused by a configured user firewall (if "Logging" has been enabled).

Log prefix	Description
ufw	A user firewall rule applies to a connection.

2025-03-21_09:41:59.15695 firewall: fw-ufw _MAIv390774000-1-3189b901- 8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:15:17:20:df:7d SRC=10.1.80.200 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=63856 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=398 MARK=10000
2025-03-21_09:42:36.18082 firewall: fw-ufw_ MAIv390774000-1-3189b901- 8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:15:17:20:df:7d SRC=10.1.80.200 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=63857 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=24482 DPT=5201 SEQ=1915233667 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 MARK=10000

4.4.13 IP- and Portforwarding (fw-portforwarding)

Log entries with the prefix **fw-portforwarding** are caused by configured IP and port forwarding rules (menu "Network >> NAT >> IP and Port Forwarding") (if "Logging" has been enabled).

Log prefix	Description
fw-portforwarding	An IP and port forwarding rule applies to a connection.

2025-03-21_08:00:29.71358 firewall: fw-portforwarding-1-3189b80a-8002-1315-
805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:0c:be:04:00:58
SRC=10.1.80.123 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=126
ID=2146 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=37646 DPT=5201 SEQ=1731043981 ACK=0 WIN-
DOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 CTMARK=1010

4.4.14 IPsec VPN firewall (fw-vpn-in, fw-vpn-out)

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-vpn-in** and **fw-vpn-out** are caused by configured incoming and/or outgoing VPN firewall rules (if "Logging" has been enabled).

Log prefix	Description
fw-vpn-in	An incoming rule applies to a connection established by the re- mote peer through the IPsec VPN tunnel.
fw-vpn-out	An outgoing rule applies to a locally established connection to the remote peer through the IPsec VPN tunnel.

2025-03-21_07:21:31.98537 firewall: fw-vpn-in _MAIv711498711-1-3189b7d8- 8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:0c:be:04:00:58 SRC=192.168.27.100 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=126 ID=239 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=376 CTMARK=800 ROWID1=MAIv711498711 ROWID2=MAIv144871511
2025-03-21_07:24:22.48150 firewall: fw-vpn-in _MAIv711498711-1-3189b7d8- 8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth0 OUT=eth1 MAC=00:0c:be:04:00:58 SRC=192.168.27.100 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=126 ID=248 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=20703 DPT=5201 SEQ=1396473492 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 CTMARK=800 ROW- ID1=MAIv711498711 ROWID2=MAIv144871511
2025 02 01 07 15 10 02 227 Second Street MAL 711 400 711 4 2100 77
2025-03-21_07:15:10.03337 firewall: W-Vpn-out _MARV711498711-1-3189D7d9- 8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=192.168.27.100 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=6650 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=12 ROWID1=MAIv711498711 ROWID2=MAIv144871511
2025-03-21_07:15:49.55344 firewall: fw-vpn-out _MAIv711498711-1-3189b7d9- 8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=192.168.27.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=6654 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=51029 DPT=5201 SEQ=1008731145 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 ROWID1=MAIv711498711 POWID2=MAIv144871511

4.4.15 OpenVPN firewall, -forwarding (fw-openvpn-in, -out, -openvpn-portfw)

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-openvpn-in** and **fw-openvpn-out** are caused by configured incoming and/or outgoing OpenVPN firewall rules (menu "OpenVPN Client >> Connections ((EDIT)) >> Firewall) (if "Logging" has been enabled).

Log entries with the prefixes **fw-openvpn-portfw** are caused by configured OpenVPN NAT rules (menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections ((EDIT)) >> NAT) (if "Logging" has been enabled).

Log prefix	Description
fw-openvpn-in	An incoming rule for the OpenVPN connection applies to an in- bound connection.
fw-openvpn-out	An outgoing rule for the OpenVPN connection applies to an outgoing connection.
fw-openvpn-portfw	A port forwarding rule applies to a connection through the OpenVPN tunnel.

Example:

2025-03-21_07:02:39.24936 firewall: **fw-openvpn-in**_MAIv231480925-1-3189b7a5-8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=tun0 OUT=eth1 MAC= SRC=11.8.0.1 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=6909 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=361

2025-03-21_07:03:23.40939 firewall: **fw-openvpn-in**_MAIv231480925-1-3189b7a5-8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=tun0 OUT=eth1 MAC= SRC=11.8.0.1 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=6913 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=20025 DPT=5201 SEQ=910850867 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0

2025-03-21_06:22:47.05735 firewall: **fw-openvpn-out**_MAIv231480925-1-3189b7a6-8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=tun0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=192.168.27.100 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=21771 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=1 SEQ=4

2025-03-21_06:23:06.76962 firewall: **fw-openvpn-out**_MAIv231480925-1-3189b7a6-8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=eth1 OUT=tun0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=192.168.27.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=21775 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=50086 DPT=5201 SEQ=3770954720 ACK=0 WINDOW=65535 SYN URGP=0

2025-03-21_07:09:44.46552 firewall: **fw-openvpn-portfw**_MAIv231480925-1-3189b7b9-8002-1315-805d-a8741dfd1b11 act=ACCEPT IN=tun0 OUT=eth1 MAC= SRC=11.8.0.1 DST=192.168.1.100 LEN=52 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=33661 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=20179 DPT=5201 SEQ=1909642899 ACK=0 WIN-DOW=65535 SYN URGP=0 CTMARK=1010

4.4.16 DoS protection: SYN flood protection (fw-SYN-flood)

The limit/threshold for new incoming and outgoing TCP connections (SYN flood protection) per second can be configured via the "Network Security >> DoS Protection" menu. If one limit is reached, a log entry with the log prefix **fw-SYN-flood** is recorded. These events are logged once per second.

Log prefix Description	
fw-SYN-flood	A limit for an incoming or outgoing TCP connection per second has been reached.

Example:

```
2025-03-21_08:56:51.06084 firewall: fw-SYN-flood act=DROP IN=eth1 OUT=eth0
MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.200 LEN=52 TOS=0x00
PREC=0x00 TTL=127 ID=29158 DF PROTO=TCP SPT=51564 DPT=8080
SEQ=408716129 ACK=0 WINDOW=64240 SYN URGP=0
```

4.4.17 DoS protection: ICMP flood protection (fw-ICMP-flood)

The maximum number of incoming and outgoing ICMP echo requests (ICMP flood protection) per second can be configured via the "Network Security >> DoS Protection" menu. If one of the limit is exceeded, a log entry with the log prefix **fw-ICMP-flood** is recorded. These events are logged once per second.

Log prefix	Description
fw-ICMP-flood	A limit for incoming or outgoing ICMP echo requests per second has been reached.

Example:

2025-03-21_08:51:10.64480 firewall: **fw-ICMP-flood** act=DROP IN=eth1 OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.200 LEN=60 TOS=0x00 PREC=0x00 TTL=254 ID=28715 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0 ID=47114 SEQ=4

4.4.18 Max. size "ICMP Echo Request packets" (fw-ICMP-maxlen)

The maximum size of the permitted ICMP echo request packets can be set via the "Network Security >> Packet Filter >> Advanced" menu. If an ICMP echo request packet exceeds this limit, a log entry with the log prefix **fw-ICMP-maxlen** is recorded.

Log prefix	Description	
fw-ICMP-maxlen	The limit for the maximum size of an ICMP echo request has been reached.	
Example:		
2025-03-21_09:05:28.59680 firewall: fw-ICMP-maxlen act=DROP IN=eth1		
OUT=eth0 MAC=08:00:27:11:1e:62 SRC=192.168.1.100 DST=10.1.80.200		
I FN=2028 TOS=0x00 PRFC=0x00 TTI =127 ID=49800 PROTO=ICMP TYPE=8 CODE=0		

ID=1 SEQ=43

5 Create X.509 certificates with OpenSSL

Document-ID: 108395_en_01 Document-Description: AH EN X.509 CERT OPENSSL © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Contents of this document

This section explains briefly how to create X. 509 certificates using the tool OpenSSL.

 5.1 Introduction	141 143 144 144 150 152 ate)
-------------------------------------	--

5.1 Introduction

The enrollment of certificates requires a certification authority (CA) which issues public key certificates for a specific period of time. A CA can be a private (in-house) CA, run by your own organization, or a public CA. A public CA is operated by a third party that you trust to validate the identity of each client or server to which it issues a certificate.

There are several tools available for creating and managing certificates, as for example *Microsoft Certification Authority (CA) Server, OpenSSL* and *XCA*.

This application note explains how to create X.509 certificates with the tools **OpenSSL** and **XCA** for setting up a VPN connection using X.509 certificates as authentication method.

1

The scope of this document is not to be a complete user's guide for the described tools. It shall help you getting familiar with them and to create the required certificates in a short term.

5.1.1 Introduction OpenSSL

OpenSSL is available for several platforms (Linux, UNIX, Windows) and can be downloaded from the Internet. We have used *OpenSSL 1.1.0e* on a *Windows 7* platform. Please refer to <u>http://www.openssl.org</u> for getting further information about OpenSSL and the supported command line options.

OpenSSL provides various ways for specifying the required options. You can enter them at the command line, specify them in a configuration file or you'll be prompted to enter them when the *openssl* command is executed. When using configuration files, you can ei-

ther specify all required parameters in one single file or use different ones, depending on which kind of certificate you want to create. The OpenSSL configuration file, which comes with OpenSSL, is called *openssl.cnf*.

i

Please note that Windows hides the file extension *.cnf*, even if you have configured the *Windows Explorer* not to do so. Therefore we use the extension *.conf*.

In the following chapters we will explain how to setup OpenSSL to act as certification authority (CA). A certificate request must be signed by the CA to become a valid certificate.

Basically you can use the examples of the following chapters for creating the certificates. You only need to follow the instructions and adjust the parameters in the section req_dn of the OpenSSL configuration file *openssl.conf* (see chapter "Modifying the OpenSSL configuration file" on page 144) to your company needs.

Here is a small legend with **file extensions** we will use for the created files and their meaning.

File extension	Explanation
key	Private key
	Restrictive permissions should be set on these files.
csr	Certificate Request
	The request will be signed by the CA in order to create the certificate. After doing this, the file is not needed any-more and can be deleted.
crt	Certificate
	This certificate can be publicly distributed.
p12	PKCS#12 export of the certificate, containing its private and public key.
	The export file is secured by a password to protect the private key against unauthorized usage.
	This certificate may not be distributed publicly.

5.2 **Preparing the CA environment**

First of all we will create a directory structure where all certificate stuff will be kept. In the following examples we use **C:\CA** as root directory. The following subdirectories need to be created:

Subdirectory	Purpose
.\certs	Directory where the certificates will be placed.
.\newcerts	Directory where OpenSSL puts the created certificates in PEM format as <i><cert number="" serial="">.pem</cert></i> (e.g. 07.pem). OpenSSL requires this directory.
.\private	Directory for storing the private keys. Ensure that you set restrictive permissions to this directory so that they can be read only by user with the appropriate privileges.

Apart of the directory tree, the following two files (*index.txt* and *serial*) need to be created:

- index.txt: This file is used as certificate "database" by OpenSSL. To create this file, proceed as follows:
 - Open a DOS prompt.
 - Switch to the CA root directory (in our example C:\CA).
 - Execute the command: *copy NUL: index.txt* This command creates the empty file *index.txt*.
- serial: This file contains the certificate serial number counter. This counter will be incremented automatically by OpenSSL when its value has been used for creating a certificate. To create this file, proceed as follows:
 - Open a DOS prompt.
 - Switch to the CA root directory (in our example C: |CA).
 - Execute the command: echo 0001 > serial
 This command creates the file serial with the initial serial number 0001.

5.3 Modifying the OpenSSL configuration file

We have named the OpenSSL configuration file *openssl.conf* and placed it into the CA root directory (in our example *C:\CA*). The OpenSSL configuration file has multiple sections. Each section is used for a different purpose. The sections include the following positions:

- **ca, CA_default**: Defines certification authority configuration.
- **policy_any**: Defines request policies.
- **req, req_dn**: Defines request defaults.

In our examples the configuration file (*openssl.conf*) has the following entries:

[req] prompt default_bits distinguished_name x509_extensions string_mask	= yes = 4096 = req_dn = req_ext = utf8only	
[ca] default_ca	= CA_default	
[CA_default] dir certs database new_certs_dir	= C:/CA = \$dir/certs = \$dir/index.txt = \$dir/newcerts	
certificate serial private_key	= \$dir/certs/ca.crt = \$dir/serial = \$dir/private/ca.key	
default_md default_days	= sha256 = 365	
x509_extensions policy	= req_ext = policy_any	
[req_dn] countryName countryName_default	= Country Name (2 letter code) = DE	
organizationName organizationName_default	= Organization Name (company) = PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG	
organizationalUnitName organizationalUnitName_default	= Organizational Unit Name (department, division) = Support	
commonName	= Common Name (hostname, IP, or your name)	
# Not used in our example #emailAddress #localityName #stateOrProvinceName	= Email Address = Locality Name (city, district) = State or Province Name (full name)	
[policy_any] countryName organizationName organizationalUnitName commonName # Not used in our example # emailAddress # localityName # stateOrProvinceName	= supplied = supplied = optional = supplied = optional = optional = optional	
[req_ext] basicConstraints	= critical, CA:false	
[ca_ext] basicConstraints keyUsage	= critical, CA:true, pathlen:0 = critical, cRLSign, keyCertSign	
Section	Option	Description
---------	--	--
[req]	This section is called when requesting a mand wth the option req .	a certificate by calling the <i>openssl</i> com-
	prompt	If set to the value no this disables prompting of certificate fields and just takes values from the configuration file directly. You should enable this option for being able to enter the <i>com- mon name</i> or to modify the default val- ues of the certificate's distinguished name for each requested certificate.
	default_bits	This specifies the default key size in bits. If not specified then 512 is used.
	distinguished_name	This specifies the section containing the distinguished name fields to prompt for when generating a certifi- cate or certificate request. In our ex- ample this section is called [req_dn] .
	x509_extensions	This specifies the configuration file section containing a list of extensions to add to certificate generated when the -x509 switch is used. It can be overridden by the -extensions com- mand line switch.
	string_mask	This option masks out the use of cer- tain string types in certain fields. If the utf8only option is used then only UTF8Strings will be used: this is the PKIX recommendation in RFC2459 after 2003.
[ca]	This section is called when signing cert command with the option ca .	ificate requests by calling the <i>openssl</i>
	default_ca	If the -name command line option is used, then it names the section to be used. Otherwise the section to be used must be named in the de- fault_ca option of the ca section of the configuration file, in our example [CA_default] .

[CA_default]	This section is called when signing cert command with the option ca , reference section.	ificate requests by calling the <i>openssl</i> ed by the default_ca option of the ca	
	dir	Root directory of the CA environment. If the configuration file is located in this directory and if you execute all <i>openssl</i> commands from this direc- tory, you simply can specify "dir = .".	
	certs	Certificates output directory.	
	database	The text database file to use (manda- tory parameter). This file must be present though initially it will be empty.	
	new_certs_dir	It specifies the directory where new certificates will be placed. Mandatory.	
	certificate	Location and filename of the CA certif- icate.	
	serial	A text file containing the next serial number to use in hex. Mandatory. This file must be present and contain a valid serial number.	
	private_key	Location and filename of the file which contains the CA's private key.	
	default_md	This option specifies the digest algo- rithm to use. Any digest supported by the OpenSSL <i>dgst</i> command can be used.	
	default_days	The default number of days the certif- icate will be valid. This default value can be overridden by the -days com- mand line switch.	
	x509_extensions	This specifies the configuration file section containing a list of extensions to add to certificate generated when the -x509 switch is used. It can be overridden by the -extensions com- mand line switch.	
[req_dn]	This specifies the parameters containing the distinguished name field prompt for when generating a certificate or certificate request, refere the distinguished_name option of the req section. If the prompt opti req section is absent or set to yes then the section contains field prom formation. <fieldname> is the field name being used, for example cor Name (or CN).</fieldname>		
	<fieldname> = "prompt"</fieldname>	The "prompt" string is used to ask the user to enter the relevant details.	
	<fieldname>_default ="default field value"</fieldname>	If the user enters nothing then the de- fault value is used if no default value is present then the field is omitted.	

[policy_any]	This option defines the CA "policy" to u policy command line switch. This is a set cides which fields should be mandatory section consists of a set of variables co the value is match then the field value n tificate. If the value is supplied then it n then it may be present. Any fields not n lently deleted.	se and needs to be specified by the – ection in the configuration file which de- y or match the CA certificate. The policy prresponding to certificate DN fields. If must match the same field in the CA cer- must be present. If the value is optional mentioned in the policy section are si-		
[ext]	Those sections specify the X.509 extensions and are referenced by the x509_extensions option within the configuration file (section [req] and [CA_default]). It can be overridden by the -extensions command line switch.			
	basicConstraints	This flag is used to determine whether the certificate can be used as a CA cer- tificate.		

5.4 Create the CA Certificate and Key

Now, that all initial configuration is done, we may create a self signed certificate, that will be used as our CA certificate. In other words, we will use this to sign other certificate requests.

Switch to the CA root directory. From this directory we can issue all **openssl commands** because our OpenSSL configuration file (*openssl.conf*) is located here.

Syntax to create the CA certificate and private key:

openssl req -new -config <filename> -x509 -extensions <section> -keyout <filename> -out <filename> -days <nn>

Option	Description
req	The <i>req</i> command primarily creates and processes cer- tificate requests. It can instead create self signed cer- tificates when the option –x509 is specified.
-new	This option generates a new certificate request.
-config <filename></filename>	This allows an alternative configuration file to be spec- ified.
-x509	This option outputs a self signed certificate instead of a certificate request.
-extensions <section></section>	Specifies the section in the openssl configuration file (specified by -config <filename></filename>) where the X.509 certificate extensions are defined.
-keyout <filename></filename>	Filename of the CA's private key. Although it is pro- tected with a pass phrase you should restrict access to it, so that only authorized users can read it.

Example:

C:\CA>openssl reg -new -config openssl.conf -x509 -extensions ca ext -keyout private/ca.key -out certs/ca.crt -days 3640 Generating a 4096 bit RSA private key++++ writing new private key to 'private/ca.key' Enter PEM pass phrase: - enter a strong pass phrase to use for this key Verifying - Enter PEM pass phrase: - reenter the pass phrase again for verification ----You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated into your certificate request. What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN. There are guite a few fields but you can leave some blank For some fields there will be a default value. If you enter '.', the field will be left blank. ____ Country Name (2 letter code) [DE]: - we have kept the default value Organization Name (company) [PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG]: - we have kept the default value Organizational Unit Name (department, division) [Support]: - we have kept the default value Common Name (hostname, IP, or your name) []:CA – we have entered the common name for the CA certificate C:\CA> Two files are created: certs/ca.crt: This is the CA's certificate and can be publicly available and of course

- certs/ca.crt: This is the CA's certificate and can be publicly available and of course world readable.
- private/ca.key: This is the CA's private key. Although it is protected with a pass phrase you should restrict access to it, so that only authorized users may have access to it.

5.5 Create a Certificate Request for the mGuard

For obtaining a valid mGuard certificate you need to create a certificate request first and then sign it with the CA certificate (explained in chapter "Sign the mGuard's Certificate Request with the CA" on page 152).

Syntax for creating a certificate request for the mGuard:

openssl req -new -config <filename> -keyout <filename> -out <filename> -days <nn>

Option	Description
req	The <i>req</i> command primarily creates and processes cer- tificate requests.
-new	This option generates a new certificate request.
-config <filename></filename>	This allows an alternative configuration file to be spec- ified.
-keyout <filename></filename>	Filename of the mGuard private key. Although it is pro- tected with a pass phrase you should restrict access to it, so that only authorized users can read it.
-out <filename></filename>	Filename of the mGuard certificate.
-days <nn></nn>	The number of days the certificate should be valid.

Example:

C:\CA>openssl reg -new -config openssl.conf -keyout private/mGuard.key -out mGuard.csr -days 364 Generating a 4096 bit RSA private key ++ + writing new private key to 'private/mGuard.key' Enter PEM pass phrase: - enter a strong pass phrase to use for this key Verifying - Enter PEM pass phrase: - reenter the pass phrase again for verification ----You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated into your certificate request. What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN. There are guite a few fields but you can leave some blank For some fields there will be a default value, If you enter '.', the field will be left blank. ----Country Name (2 letter code) [DE]: - we have kept the default value Organization Name (company) [PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG]: - we have kept the default value Organizational Unit Name (department, division) [Support]: - we have kept the default value Common Name (hostname, IP, or your name) []:mGuard - enter the common name for the mGuard certificate C:\CA>

Two files are created:

- mGuard.csr: This is the certificate request which needs to be signed by the CA certificate.
- private/mGuard.key: This is the private key, which is not protected with a pass phrase.

5.6 Sign the mGuard's Certificate Request with the CA

The mGuard's certificate request needs to be signed by the CA to become a valid certificate.

Syntax for signing the mGuard's certificate request with the CA:

openssl ca -config <filename> -out <filename> -infiles <filename>

Option	Description
ca	The ca command is a minimal CA application. It can be used to sign certificate requests in a variety of forms and generate CRLs it also maintains a text database of issued certificates and their status.
-config <filename></filename>	This allows an alternative configuration file to be spec- ified.
-out <filename></filename>	Filename of the signed mGuard certificate.
-infiles <filename></filename>	Filename of the mGuard's certificate request. This must be the last option.

Example:

C:\CA>openssl ca -config openssl.conf -out certs/mGuard.crt -infiles mGuard.csr Using configuration from openssl.conf Enter pass phrase for C:/CA/private/ca.key: - enter the pass phrase of the CA's private key Check that the request matches the signature Signature ok The Subject's Distinguished Name is as follows countryName :PRINTABLE:'DE' organizationName :ASN.1 12:'PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG' organizationalUnitName:ASN.1 12:'Support' commonName :ASN.1 12:'mGuard' Certificate is to be certified until Jul 7 09:02:23 2018 GMT (365 days) Sign the certificate? [y/n]:y 1 out of 1 certificate requests certified, commit? [y/n]y Write out database with 1 new entries Data Base Updated C:\CA>

After all this is done two new files are created:

- certs/mGuard.crt: This is the mGuards's certificate, which can be made available publicly.
- newcerts/01.pem: This is exactly the same certificate, but with the certificate's serial number (hex number) as filename. For subsequent requests the number is incremented. This file is not needed anymore and can be removed.

Now you can delete the mGuard's certificate request (*mGuard.csr*). It's no longer needed.

5.7 Creating the mGuard's PKCS#12 file (Machine Certificate)

This file combines the private and public key and is the mGuard's machine certificate which needs to be imported through the mGuard menu **Authentication >> Certificates** >> **Machine Certificates**. You'll be prompted to enter a password which protects the PKCS#12 export of the certificate against unauthorized usage.

Following is the syntax to create the mGuard machine certificate:

openssl pkcs12 -export -in <filename> -inkey <filename> -out <filename>

Option	Description
pkcs12	The <i>pkcs12</i> command allows PKCS#12 files to be created and parsed.
-export	This option specifies that a PKCS#12 file will be cre- ated rather than parsed.
-in <filename></filename>	The filename to read the certificate from. The format of the file must be PEM. This is the mGuard's certificate you have created in the previous step.
-inkey <filename></filename>	File to read private key from. This is the file which con- tains the private key of the mGuard's certificate.
-out <filename></filename>	The filename to write certificates and private keys to. They are all written in PEM format.

Example:

C:\CA>openssl pkcs12 -export -in certs/mGuard.crt -inkey private/mGuard.key -out certs/mGuard.p12

Enter pass phrase for private/mGuard.key: - enter the password of the mGuard's private key

Enter Export Password: - enter a strong pass phrase to use for this export

Verifying - Enter Export Password: - reenter the pass phrase again for verification

C:\CA>

This command will create a file called **certs/mGuard.p12**, containing the mGuard certificate public and private key. The file is protected by the entered password.

5.8 Example: VPN connection between two mGuard devices

We assume that you already have setup the CA environment, configured the OpenSSL's configuration file (*openssl.conf*) and created the CA certificate and key. (As described in the previous chapters.)

Step 1: Create a certificate request for each mGuard

mGuard 1

openssl req -new -config openssl.conf -keyout private/mGuard1.key -out mGuard1.csr -days 364

mGuard 2

openssl req -new -config openssl.conf -keyout private/mGuard2.key -out mGuard2.csr -days 364

Step 2: Sign each certificate request with the CA

mGuard 1

openssl ca -config openssl.conf -out certs/mGuard1.crt -infiles mGuard1.csr

mGuard 2

openssl ca -config openssl.conf -out certs/mGuard2.crt -infiles mGuard2.csr

The two certificates **certs/mGuard1.crt** and **certs/mGuard2.crt** are created. **mGuard1.crt** needs to be imported on mGuard **2** as connection certificate through the menu **IPsec VPN >> Connections >> Authentication**. **mGuard2.crt** on **mGuard 1** correspondingly.

Step 3: Obtain the machine certificate for each mGuard

mGuard 1

openssl pkcs12 -export -in certs/mGuard1.crt -inkey private/mGuard1.key -out certs/mGuard1.p12

mGuard 2

openssl pkcs12 -export -in certs/mGuard2.crt -inkey private/mGuard2.key -out certs/mGuard2.p12

The two exports certs/mGuard1.p12 and certs/mGuard2.p12 are created.

mGuard1.p12 needs to be imported on mGuard **1** as machine certificate through the menu **Authentication >> Certificates >> Machine Certificates**. **mGuard2.p12** on mGuard **2** correspondingly.

mGuard

6 Create X.509 certificates with XCA



Document-Description: AH EN X.509 CERT XCA © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



i

Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Contents of this document

This section explains briefly how to create X.509 certificates using the tool XCA.



XCA provides much more functionality than explained in this document. Please refer to the XCA documentation for further information (<u>http://xca.sourceforge.net/xca.html</u> – 15.09.2017). You can download XCA from <u>http://xca.sourceforge.net</u>. The screenshots and descriptions in this chapter are related to XCA v1.3.2.

6.1	Introduction	157
6.2	Create an XCA database	
6.3	Create a certificate template	
6.4	Create a CA Certificate	
6.5	Create a Client Certificate	
6.6	Export a certificate	
6.7	Sign a Certificate Request with the CA	172
6.8	Using a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)	
6.9	Example: VPN connection between two mGuard devices	
	•	

6.1 Introduction

The enrollment of certificates requires a certification authority (CA) which issues public key certificates for a specific period of time. A CA can be a private (in-house) CA, run by your own organization, or a public CA. A public CA is operated by a third party that you trust to validate the identity of each client or server to which it issues a certificate.

There are several tools available for creating and managing certificates, as for example *Microsoft Certification Authority (CA) Server, OpenSSL* and *XCA*.

This application note explains how to create X.509 certificates with the tools **OpenSSL** and **XCA** for setting up a VPN connection using X.509 certificates as authentication method.



The scope of this document is not to be a complete user's guide for the described tools. It shall help you getting familiar with them and to create the required certificates in a short term.

6.1.1 XCA - X Certificate and key management

XCA is intended for the creation and management of X. 509 certificates, certificate requests, RSA, DSA and EC private keys, smart cards and CRLs. Everything that is required for a CA is implemented. All CAs can sign sub-CAs recursively. For enterprise-wide use, templates are available that can be used and adapted to generate certificates or certificate request. All crypto data is stored in an endian-agnostic file format portable across operating systems.

6.2 Create an XCA database

To create X.509 certificates and keys using XCA you need to create a database first. Proceed as follows:

- 1. Click File >> New DataBase.
- 2. Specify the filename and the storage location of the database.
- 3. Click Save.
- 4. Enter a password which protects the database against unauthorized usage. The password will be requested every time you open the XCA database.

6.2.1 Open an XCA database

When restarting XCA, you need to reconnect to a database first. To open an already created database, proceed as follows:

- 1. Click File >> Open DataBase.
- 2. Select the desired database (file *.xdb).
- 3. Click Open.

6.2.2 Set default hash algorithm

NOTE: Phoenix Contact recommends using secure and up to date encryption and hash algorithms, as stated in the mGuard Software Reference Manual, available at <u>phoenix-contact.net/products</u> (search for "UM EN MGUARD", choose a product and select the manual in the download area).

Before you start creating certificates, you should set the default hash algorithm to **SHA 256**. If you don't set the default hash algorithm to SHA 256 you will need to do it every time creating a new certificate.



NOTE: Not all appliances support the functionality of the SHA 2 family

If you are unsure, if all of your appliances support the functionality of the SHA 2 family, the less secure SHA 1 algorithm might be used instead (not recommended by PHOENIX CONTACT and not in accordance with ANSSI-CSPN-2016-09).

Proceed as follows:

 Click File >> Options and set the default hash algorithm to SHA 256 (or the algorithm you will use in your setup).

😣 🗉 X Certificate and Key management	
XCA Options	
Settings Distinguished name PKCS#11 provider	
Default hash algorithm SHA 256	•
String types Printable string or UTF8 (default)	•
Suppress success messages	
Don't colorize expired certificates	
Translate established x509 terms (commonName -> Common name)	

6.3 Create a certificate template

If you need to create more than one certificate it is useful to define a template for consistency reasons and less typing. This template can be used when creating the certificates.



- 1. Move to the tab **Templates**.
- 2. Click **New template**.
- 3. Select the **Preset Template Values** and click **OK**.

Sector XCA template	y mana	gement				
Subject Extensions Key	y usage	Netscape	Advance	ed		
Distinguished name						
Internal name	XCA D	ocumentatio	n	organizationName	PHOENIX CON	ITACT
countryName				organizationalUnitName		
stateOrProvinceName				commonName	XCA Docu	
localityName				emailAddress	info@phoenix	contact.com
Туре				Content		Add
						Delete
Private key						
				🗘 🔲 Used keys	too <u>G</u> enerat	e a new key
					Cancel	<u>O</u> K

6.3.1 Create XCA template >> Tab: Subject

- 1. Move to the tab **Subject**
- 2. Use the entry fields from **Internal name** to **emailAddress** for entering the identifying parameters that shall be common for all certificates.
- The template will be stored in XCA under the **Internal name**.
- 3. Move to the tab **Extensions**.

Jbject	isions Key usage Ne	tscape	Advanced			
(509v3 Basic (Constraints				Key ident	ifier
Туре	End Entity			*	🗌 <u>S</u> ubj	ject Key Identifier
Path length				Critical	Auti	hority Key Identifier
11.114						
alidity		Ti	ime range			
Not before	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT	T	365		Days	Apply
Not before Not after	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT	Ti • •	365	🗌 Local time	Days	Apply I-defined expiration
Not before Not after	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT	▼ ▼	365	Local time	Days	Apply I-defined expiration
Not before Not after	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT	TI	365	Local time	Days	Apply
Not before Not after	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT	T	365	🗌 Local time	Days	Apply I-defined expiration
Not before Not after Not after 509v3 Subject	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT t Alternative Name	T	365	C Local time	Days	Apply Apply I-defined expiration Edit
Not before Not after 509v3 Subject 509v3 Issuer /	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT t Alternative Name Alternative Name		365	Local time	Days	Apply Apply I-defined expiration Edit Edit
Not before Not after 509v3 Subject 509v3 Issuer / 509v3 CRL Di:	2017-07-10 12:14 GMT 2018-07-10 12:14 GMT t Alternative Name Alternative Name stribution Points		365	C Local time	Days	Apply Apply Ldefined expiration Edit Edit Edit Edit

6.3.2 Create XCA template >> Tab: Extensions

- 1. In Section X509v3 Basic Constraints:
 - Set the **Type** to *End Entity* if you want to use the template for creating client certificates.
 - Set the **Type** to *Certification Authority* if the template should be used for creating CA certificates.
- 2. In Section Time Range:
 - Set the default lifetime of the certificates and click **Apply**.
- 3. Click **OK** to create the template.

6.4 Create a CA Certificate

If you don't use self signed client certificates, a client certificate must be signed by the CA certificate to become a valid certificate. Therefore you need to create the CA certificate first before creating the client certificates. The CA certificate is a self signed certificate.



- 1. Move to the tab **Certificates**.
- 2. Click New Certificate.

😣 🗐 🗴 c	ertificate	e and Key ma	nagement				
Create	x509 Ce	ertificate				a) Harman .	
Source	Subject	Extensions	Key usage	Netscape	Advanced		
Signing	request						
Si	gn this Ce	rtificate signi	ng <u>r</u> equest			* *	
S C	opy exten	sions from th	e request			Show request	
	odifv subi	iect of the red	uest				
Signing							
() C	reate a <u>s</u> e	lf signed cert	ificate with t	he serial 1			1
0 U	se <u>t</u> his Cei	rtificate for si	gning			4 *	1
Signatu					SHA 256		
Signatu	eargonici				3HA 230		9
Templa	te for the	new certific	ate				
[def	ault] CA					-	٦
	-				Apply e	avtensions Apply subject Apply all	-
						<u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> K	

6.4.1 Create x509 (CA) Certificate >> Tab: Source

- 1. Move to the tab **Source**.
- 2. In Section **Signing**: Ensure that **Create a self signed certificate with the serial** is selected.
- 3. You may enter a serial number for the certificate or leave the default value.
- 4. In Section **Template for the new certificate**: If you have created a template for creating CA certificates, you may select it and click **Apply**.
- 5. Move to the tab **Subject**.

ource Subject	Extensi	ions	Key usage	Netscape	Advanced			
Internal name		XCA	Documental	tion	organization	Name	PHOENIX COI	NTACT
countryName					organization	alUnitName		
stateOrProvinc	eName				commonNam	ne	XCA Docu	
localityName					emailAddres	s	info@phoeni	xcontact.com
Туј	pe				Content			Add
								Delete
								Delete
								Delete
								Delete
								Delete
								Delete

6.4.2 Create x509 (CA) Certificate >> Tab: Subject

- 1. In Section **Distinguished name**: Use the entry fields from **Internal name** to **emailAddress** for entering the identifying parameters of the CA.
- 2. In Section **Private key**: Click **Generate a new key** for creating the private RSA key for the CA.

😣 🗊 X Cert	tificate and Key management							
New key	Oji IIII							
Please give a keysize	Please give a name to the new key and select the desired keysize							
Key propert	Key properties							
Name	XCA Documentation							
Keytype	RSA 2							
Keysize	4096 bit 🔹							
🗌 Rememb	er as default							
	Cancel							

- 3. Enter a Name for the key, specify the desired Keytype and Keysize and click Create.
- 4. Move to the tab **Extensions**.

🔲 X Certifi	cate and K	ey mar	nagem	ent												
reate x509	Certifica	te													J	Perminada Minkue
Source Subje	ct Exten	sions	Key us	sage	Ne	tscape	Adv	anceo	ł							
X509v3 Basic	Constrain	ts									Ke	y ider	ntifie	er		
Туре	Certifica	tion Au	thority	y				*				<u> </u>	bjec	t Key	y Idei	ntifier
Path length									Cri	tical		Au	Ithor	ity K	(ey lo	lentifie
Validity					Tİ	me rar	ige									
Validity Not before	2017-07-	10 12:5	3 GMT	•	ті	me ra r 10	ige				Ye	ars			A	pply
Validity Not before Not after	2017-07-	10 12:5	3 GMT 3 GMT	•		me rar 10	ige dnight		Local	time	Ye	ars No we	ell-de	efine	A ed ex	pply piratio
Validity Not before Not after	2017-07-	10 12:5 10 12:5	3 GMT 3 GMT	• •		me rar 10	ige dnight		Local	time	Ye	ars No we	ell-de	efine	A ed ex	oply piratio
Validity Not before Not after	2017-07-	10 12:5 10 12:5	3 GMT 3 GMT	· •		me rar 10 Mi	ige dnight		Local	time	Ye	ars No we	ell-de	efine	A ed ex	oply piratio
Validity Not before Not after	2017-07- 2018-07-	10 12:5 10 12:5	3 GMT	• •		me rar 10	n ge dnight		Local	time	Ye	ars No we	ell-de	efine	A ed ex	oply piratio
Validity Not before Not after X509v3 Subje	2017-07- 2018-07- :t Alternati	10 12:5 10 12:5 ve Nan	3 GMT 3 GMT ne	• •		me rar 10 Mi	nge dnight		Local	time	Ye	ars No we	ell-de	efine	A ed ex	pply piratio Edit
Validity Not before Not after X509v3 Subje X509v3 Issuer	2017-07- 2018-07- :t Alternati Alternativ	10 12:5 10 12:5 ve Nan	3 GMT 3 GMT ne			me rar 10 Mi	nge dnight		Local	time	Ye	ars No we	ell-de	efine		pply piratio Edit Edit
Validity Not before Not after X509v3 Subje X509v3 Issuer X509v3 CRL D	2017-07- 2018-07- :t Alternativ istribution	10 12:5 10 12:5 ve Nan 2 Name Points	3 GMT 3 GMT ne			me rar	nge dnight		Local	time		ars No we	: ell-do	¢) (A ed ex	pply piratio Edit Edit Edit

6.4.3 Create x509 (CA) Certificate >> Tab: Extensions

Proceed as follows:

- 5. In Section X509v3 Basic Constraints: Set the Type to Certification Authority.
- 6. In Section **Time Range**: Set the default lifetime of the certificates and click **Apply**. For a CA certificate you may want it to last longer than the client certificates so that you do not have to reissue the certificates so often. A lifetime of 10 years might be a good value.
- 7. Click Apply.
- 8. Click **OK** to create the certificate.

The CA certificate is displayed in the tab Certificates.

6.5 Create a Client Certificate

If you want to create client certificates, you have to create or import a CA certificate first, which will be used to sign the client certificate. By signing the client certificate with the CA certificate, it becomes valid.

1

A CA certificate to sign the client certificate must be available in the XCA database. If it is not available it has to be created first (see "Create a CA Certificate" on page 163).

vate Keys	Certific	ate signing requests	s Certifica	ates T	emplates	Revocation lists
Internal nam	e ▼	commonName	CA	Seria	l	New Carlificate
A CA_I	Docu	CA_Docu	🖌 Yes		01 20	New Certificate
						Export
						Import
						Show Details
						Delete
						Import <u>P</u> KCS#12
						Import P <u>K</u> CS#7
						Plain View
(n)			Jarminach Dindroob Zine

- 1. Move to the tab **Certificates**.
- 2. Click New Certificate.

80 X (Certificat	e and Key ma	nagement					
Create	x509 Ce	ertificate				() Training par		
Source	Subject	Extensions	Key usage	Netscape	Advanced			
Cicalao								
Signing	request							
	ign this Ce	ertificate signi	ng <u>r</u> equest			* *		
✓ C	opy exten	sions from th	e request		Show request			
	lodify subj	ject of the red	quest					
Signing C	reate a <u>s</u> e Ise <u>t</u> his Ce	lf signed cert	ificate with t	he serial 🛛 1	CA_Docu	¢		
Signatu	re algorith	hm			SHA 256	•		
Templa	te for the	e new certific	ate					
XCA	Documen	Itation				\$		
					Apply e	extensions Apply subject Apply all		
						<u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> K		

6.5.1 Create x509 (Client) Certificate >> Tab: Source

- 1. Move to the tab **Source**.
- 2. In Section **Signing**: Ensure that the correct CA is selected in the field **Use this certif**icate for signing.
- 3. In Section **Template for the new certificate**: If you have created a template for creating client certificates, you may select it and click **Apply**.
- 4. Move to the tab **Subject**.

Create Source	x509 Ce Subject	ertificate Extensi	e ons	Key usage	Netscape	Advanced			A Constant of the
Disting	juished na	me							
Inter	nal name		CLIE	NT CERTIFIC	ATE A	organization	Name	PHOENIX COM	ITACT
coun	ltryName					organization	alUnitName		
state	OrProvinc	eName				commonNar	ne	CLIENT A	
local	ityName					emailAddres	is	info@phoenix	contact.com
	Ту	pe				Conten	t		Add
									Delete
Private	key ENT CERTIF	FICATE A	(RSA	:4096 bit)		*	Used keys	toc <u>G</u> eneral	e a new key

6.5.2 Create x509 (Client) Certificate >> Tab: Subject

- 1. In Section **Distinguished name**: Use the entry fields from **Internal name** to **emailAddress** for entering the identifying parameters of the client certificate.
- 2. In Section **Private key**: Click **Generate a new key** for creating the private RSA key for the certificate.

😣 🗈 X Cerl	tificate and Key management							
New key								
Please give a keysize	Please give a name to the new key and select the desired keysize							
Key propert	Key properties							
Name	XCA Documentation							
Keytype	RSA	*						
Keysize	4096 bit	•						
🗌 Rememb	Remember as default							
	<u>C</u> ancel Crea	ite						

- 3. Enter a Name for the key, specify the desired Keytype and Keysize and click Create.
- 4. Move to the tab **Extensions**.

🔍 🗉 X Certific	ate and Key managem	ient		
reate x509 (Certificate			A CHEMICAL STR
Source Subje	ct Extensions Key u	sage 1	Netscape Advanced	
X509v3 Basic (Constraints			Key identifier
Туре	End Entity		.	Subject Key Identifier
Path length			Critical	Authority Key Identifier
Validity			Time range	
Not before	2017-07-13 07:59 GMT	-	2	Years 💲 Apply
Not after	2018-07-10 14:44 GMT	-	🗌 Midnight 🗌 Local time	No well-defined expiration
		10.77	22.40.2	
XSU9V3 SUDJec		[P:77.	33.10.2	Edit
X509v3 Issuer	Alternative Name	_		Edit
X509v3 CRL Di	stribution Points			Edit
Authority Infor	mation Access	OCSP	•	Edit
				<u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> K

6.5.3 Create x509 (Client) Certificate >> Tab: Extensions

- 1. In Section X509v3 Basic Constraints: Set the Type to End Entity.
- 2. In Section **Time Range**: Set the default lifetime of the certificates and click **Apply**.
- The mGuard uses as default VPN identifier the subject name of the certificate. If you want to use another VPN identifier (e. g. email address, hostname or IP address), this identifier must be present in the certificate as subject alternative name.
 To add another identifier, click Edit in the line X509v3 Subject Alternative Name, select the identifier type (email, DNS or IP), enter its value, click Add and then Apply.
- Click OK to create the certificate. The client certificate will be displayed in the tab Certificates beneath the CA certificate.

aluate Keur	Cashifiant		-	Costificatos	Tama	labaa	Deve entire lists
ivate keys	Certifica	te signing request	S	Certificates	Temp	laces	Revocation lists
	Internal n	ame	~	common	Name		Now Costificat
🔻 🍂 CA	_Docu			CA_Docu			New Certificat
A 📬	CLIENT	CERTIFICATE	A	CLIENT A		1	Export
							<u>I</u> mport
							<u>S</u> how Details
							L L

6.6 Export a certificate

To export a certificate created with XCA, proceed as follows:

- 1. Move to the tab Certificates.
- 2. Highlight the certificate that shall be exported.
- 3. Click Export.

😣 💷 X Certificate and Key management	
Certificate export	() (Stemming (2))
Name CLIENT CERTIFICATE A	
Filename /home/kbentlage-git/CLIENT_CERTIFIC	ATE_A.p12
The certificate and the private key as encrypted PKCS#12 file	Export Format PKCS #12 (*.p12)
	Cancel OK

- 4. Select the Export Format (PEM or PKCS#12 see info box below).
- 5. Specify the desired **Filename** and the location where the export should be stored.
- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. If you export the certificate as PKCS#12 then you'll be prompted to enter a password which protects the export against unauthorized usage. Enter the Password and click **OK**.



PKCS (Public Key Cryptography Standards)

PKCS #12: Personal Information Exchange Syntax v1.1 (defined in RFC 7292)

PKCS #12 v1.1 describes a transfer syntax for personal identity information, including private keys, certificates, miscellaneous secrets, and extensions. Machines, applications, browsers, Internet kiosks, and so on, that support this standard will allow a user to import, export, and exercise a single set of personal identity information. This standard supports direct transfer of personal information under several privacy and integrity modes (RFC 7292).

1

PEM (privacy-enhanced mai) (defined in RFC's 1421 through 1424)

A PEM container may include just the public certificate or an entire certificate chain (including public key, private key, and root certificates).

PEM data is commonly stored in files with a ".**pem**" or "**.cer**" suffix or a "**.crt**" suffix (for certificates), or a "**.key**" suffix (for public or private keys).

6.7 Sign a Certificate Request with the CA

To sign a certificate request, proceed as follows:

- 1. Move to the tab Certificate signing requests.
- 2. Click Import.
- 3. Select a certificate request (PKCS#10 file) which should be signed by the CA and click **Open**.
- 4. The imported certificate request is displayed in the tab Certificate signing requests.



6.7.1 X Certificate and Key Management >> Tab: Source

😣 🗉 🗙 🤇	X Certificate and Key management								
Create	x509 Certif	ficate				A Standard Tax			
Source	Extensions	Key usage	Netscape	Advanced					
	•								
Signing	Signing request								
🗹 S	ign this Certif	icate signing	request		Cert Request	*			
S C	opy extension	ns from the r	equest		Show request				
	1odify subject	of the reque	est						
Signing	,								
0 0	O Create a self signed certificate with the serial 1								
0 U	Use this Certificate for signing CA_Docu								

To sign the certificate request, proceed as follows:

- 1. Move to the tab Certificate signing requests.
- 2. Right click the certificate request and select Sign from the context menu.
- 3. In Section **Signing**: Ensure that the correct CA certificate is selected in the field **Use this certificate for signing**.
- 4. Move to the tab **Extensions**.

🗕 🗉 🛛 X Certificate and Key manage	ment	
Create x509 Certificate		Contraction of the
Source Extensions Key usage N	etscape Advanced	
X509v3 Basic Constraints		Key identifier
Type Not defined	*	Subject Key Identifier
Path length		al 📃 Authority Key Identifier
ve trattere	- :	
Not before 2017 07 12 11:42 CM		Noors A Apply
Not before 2017-07-13 11.42 dm		rears - Apply
Not after 2018-07-10 14:44 GM		
X509v3 Subject Alternative Name		Edit
X509v3 Issuer Alternative Name		Edit
X509v3 CRL Distribution Points		Edit
Authority Information Access	OCSP ‡	Edit
		Cancel OK

6.7.2 X Certificate and Key Management >> Tab: Extensions

- 1. In Section **X509v3 Basic Constraints**: Leave **Type** as *Not defined*. Otherwise XCA would copy the certificate extensions twice into the signed certificate.
- 2. In Section **Time Range**: Set the default lifetime for the new certificate and click **Apply**.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. The signed certificate request is displayed in the tab **Certificates** beneath the CA certificate.

8	🔵 🗊 X Cei	rtificate a	ind Key manag	ement	t				
1	Private Keys	Certifica	te signing requ	ests	Certificat	es	Templates	Revocation lists	
	Ini	ternal nam	ne	CA	mmonNar	ne	CA	New Certific	ate
		Cert Re	equest	Cert	t Reque	est	No	Export	
	Actor Actor	Client Client	Certific Certific	Clie Clie	ent A ent B		No No	<u>I</u> mport	
								Show Deta	ils

6.8 Using a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)

6.8.1 Revoke a certificate

- 1. Move to the tab **Certificates**.
- 2. Right click the client certificate that should be revoked and select **Revoke** from the context menu.
- 3. Edit the parameters and click **OK**.
- 4. The revoked certificate is marked with a cross icon **(2)** and the **Trust state** is *Not trusted*.

6.8.2 Specify the CRL renewal period

- 1. Move to the tab **Certificates**.
- 2. Right click the CA and select **CA >> Properties** from the context menu.
- 3. Enter the desired renewal period into the field Days until next CRL issuing.
- 4. Click **OK**.

6.8.3 Create the CRL

- 1. Move to the tab Certificates.
- 2. Right click the CA and select CA >> Generate CRL from the context menu.
- 3. Edit the parameters and click **OK**.
- 4. The CRL is displayed in the tab **Revocation lists**.

6.8.4 Obtain information about a CRL

- 1. Move to the tab **Revocation lists**.
- 2. Highlight the CRL and click **Show Details**.

6.8.5 Export of the CRL

- 1. Move to the tab **Revocation lists**.
- 2. Highlight the CRL.
- 3. Click Export.
- 4. Specify the filename and location for storing the CRL.
- 5. Chose the export format (DER or PEM).
- 6. Click **OK**.

Example: VPN connection between two mGuard de-6.9 vices

To create and import the required certificates for a VPN connection between two mGuard devices, proceed as follows:

- **CA Certificate** Create a CA certificate as described in chapter "Create a CA Certificate" on page 163. •
- **Client Certificate**
- Create a client certificate for mGuard #1 and a client certificate for mGuard #2 as ٠ described in chapter "Create a Client Certificate" on page 167.
- **Export certificates**
- Export the certificates as described in chapter "Export a certificate" on page 171. ٠

The following exports are required:

- mGuard #1 as PKCS#12: This export needs to be imported on mGuard #1 as a Ma-_ chine Certificate (menu: Authentication >> Certificates, tab Machine Certificates).
- mGuard #2 as PKCS#12: This export needs to be imported on mGuard #2 as a Machine Certificate (menu: Authentication >> Certificates, tab Machine Certificates).
- mGuard #1 as PEM: This export needs to be imported on mGuard #2 as connection certificate (menu: IPsec VPN >> Connections >> (Edit), tab Authentication).
- mGuard #2 as PEM: This export needs to be imported on mGuard #1 as connection certificate (menu: IPsec VPN >> Connections >> (Edit), tab Authentication).



mGuard

7 Establish an IPsec VPN connection between iOS client and mGuard device



Contents of this document

This document describes the required steps to configure a VPN connection between the mGuard server and an iOS client (iPad or iPhone with iOS version 8.0 or later).

7.1	Introduction	177
7.2	Manage certificates	178
7.3	Configure VPN connections	184
7.4	Start VPN connections on the iOS client	188
7.5	Check VPN connections on the mGuard	189

7.1 Introduction

The iOS device acts as a remote client that initiates the IPsec VPN connection. The mGuard acts as the local server and configures and provides the local network for the clients via the XAuth/Mode Config extension.

The VPN connections require the installation of X.509 certificates and keys both on the iOS client and the mGuard device.

1

For general information on how to configure VPN connections, please refer to the "Software Reference Manual – mGuard Firmware", available <u>online</u> or in the PHOENIX CON-TACT Webshop at: <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>. For further information regarding the iOS client, please refer to the corresponding manufacturer's web page.

7.1.1 Requirements

- mGuard device with installed firmware 8.5 or later
- iOS device with installed firmware version 8.0 or later
- All required and signed certificates



How to obtain X.509 certificates?

For further information about certificate management please refer to the application note "AH EN MGUARD APPNOTES", available in the PHOENIX CONTACT Webshop at: <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

7.2 Manage certificates

To establish an IPsec VPN connection between an iOS client and the mGuard server, the devices need to authenticate each other via X.509 certificates.

Device	Required certificate	Format
mGuard	CA Certificate	PEM / CER
	mGuard Machine Certificate (signed by CA)	PKCS#12
iOS client	CA Certificate	PEM / CER
	iOS Client Certificate (signed by CA)	PKCS#12



Figure 7-1 Certificate handling for connections initiated by iOS clients

The terms "Machine Certificate" and "Client Certificate" signify an X.509 certificate and it's corresponding private key by which the machine/client identifies itself to it's peers.

7.2.1 Required certificates on the mGuard device

The following certificates need to be installed on the mGuard device.

1. CA Certificate (PEM / CER)

The mGuard verifies the iOS client on the basis of the iOS Client Certificate signed by the CA Certificate.

2. mGuard Machine Certificate (PKCS#12)

The iOS client verifies the mGuard on the basis of the mGuard Machine Certificate signed by the CA Certificate. The CA Certificate must therefore be installed on the iOS client.

i

NOTE: The network address of the mGuard device must be added in the certificate When creating the mGuard Machine Certificate, the IP address (or hostname/DNS name) that the iOS client uses to establish a VPN connection with the mGuard device (usually the external server IP address of the mGuard device) must be entered in two places:

commonName (CN) --> see Figure 7-2 and Figure 7-3

- X509v3 Subject Alternative Name --> see Figure 7-4

Establish an IPsec VPN connection between iOS client and mGuard device

Network » Interfaces							
General External Internal DMZ Secondary External							
Network Status							
External IP address	76.126.21.4	4					
Current default route	10.1.0.254						
Liced DNS corver	1075353						
Natwork Moda	100.0000						
Network Mode							
Network mode	Router					•	
Router mode	Static					•	
Network » Interfaces							
General External Inter	nal DMZ	Secondary E	xternal				
External Networks						0	
Seq. 🕂 IP address		Netmask		Use VLAN	VLAN ID		
1 76.126.21	44	255.255.255.0			1		
Additional External Routes							
Figure	7-2 (Examp	ole) Network setti	ngs on the	e mGuard: ex	ternal IP add	lress high-	
	lighted						
Authentication » Certificates							
Certificate Settings Machine Certific	ates CA Cert	ificates Remote	e Certificate:	5 CRL			
Machine Certificates							
Seq. 🕂 Short name		Certificate details					
76.126.21.44		🗄 Download 🗖	PKCS#12 F	Password	1 Upload	•	
		Subject: CN=76.126.	21.44,0=Ph	oenix Contact C	S,L=Berlin,ST=Ge	ermany,C=DE	
		Issuer: C <mark>N-CA mGua</mark>	rd,0-Phoen i	x Cont act CS,L=	Berlin,ST=Germa	any,C=DE	
1 (+)		Valid from: Oct 15 12	2:22:01 2015	i GMT			
		Valid until: Oct 14 12	:19:50 2016	GMT			
		Fingerprint MD5: 93:	13:61:BA:AC	:E2:5F:8D:D1:0)9:B3:66:14:10:	13:CC	

😕 🗉 🛛 X Certificate and Key managem	ent					
Create x509 Certificate						
Source Subject Extensions Key us	sage Netscape Advanced					
X509v3 Basic Constraints	Key identifier					
Type End Entity	🗘 🗌 Subject Key I	dentifier				
Path length	Critical <u>A</u> uthority Ke	y Identifier				
Validity Not before 2017-07-13 07:59 GMT Not after 2018-07-10 14:44 GMT	Time range 2 Years Midnight Local time No well-defined	Apply expiration				
X509v3 Subject Alternative Name 🖌	IP:76.125.21.44	Edit				
X509v3 Issuer Alternative Name		Edit				
X509v3 CRL Distribution Points		Edit				
Authority Information Access	OCSP ‡	Edit				
	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>о</u> к				

Figure 7-3 Machine Certificate: CN = mGuard's external IP address or DNS name

Figure 7-4 Machine Certificate: Example (XCA) – X509v3 Subject Alternative Name
7.2.2 Required certificates on the iOS client

The following certificates need to be installed on the iOS device (see page 178).

1. CA Certificate (PEM/CER)

The iOS client verifies the mGuard server on the basis of the mGuard Machine Certificate signed by the CA.

2. iOS Client Certificate (PKCS#12)

The mGuard verifies the iOS client on the basis of the iOS Client Certificate signed by the CA. The signing CA Certificate must therefore be installed on the mGuard.



Because the iOS client ignores the keychain of the PKCS#12 file, the signing CA Certificate must therefore be separately installed on the mGuard.

7.2.3 Install certificates on the mGuard device

Machine Certificate

To upload the mGuard Machine Certificate to the mGuard, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the Menu "Authentication >> Certificate" (Tab "Machine Certificates")
- 2. Click the icon \bigoplus to create a new table row.
- 3. Click the icon \square .
- 4. Choose the Machine Certificate (PKCS#12 file) and click "Open".
- 5. Enter the password, that has been used to protect the private key of the certificate.
- 6. Click the button "Upload".
 - ► The uploaded certificate appears in the certificates list.
- 7. Click "Apply" to save the settings.
 - ► The mGuard Machine Certificate has been uploaded and can be used for authentication towards the iOS client (see "Configure mGuard", "Tab "Authentication"").

CA Certificate

To upload the CA Certificate to the mGuard, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "Authentication >> Certificate" (Tab "CA Certificates").
- 2. Click the icon \bigoplus to create a new table row.
- 3. Click the icon \square .
- 4. Choose the CA Certificate (PEM or CER file) and click "Open".
- 5. Click the button "Upload".
 - ► The uploaded certificate appears in the certificates list.
- 6. Click "Apply" to save the settings.
 - ► The CA Certificate has been uploaded and can be used to authenticate the iOS client certificate (see "Configure mGuard", "Tab "Authentication"").



7.2.4 Install certificates on the iOS client

Figure 7-5 Installation of client certificates

No SIM	হ	14:22		€ 🕸 🛞 💽
	Settings	〈 General	Profiles	
VPN	VPN Not Connected			
		CONFIGURATION PROFILES		
	Notifications	iOS-Client		>
	Control Center			
C	Do Not Disturb	CA mGuard		>
Ø	General 1			
-				

Figure 7-6 Installed certificates in the certificate list

To install the iOS Client Certificate or the CA Certificate on the iOS client, proceed as follows:

- 1. Make the certificate file available on the iOS client.
- 2. Open the file.
 - The screen "Install Profile" appears.
- 3. Click twice on "Install".
 - If the certificate has been secured with a secret key (PKCS#12 files), the screen "Enter Password" appears.
- 4. In this case, enter the password.
- 5. Click "Next".
 - ► The screen "Profile Installed" appears.
- 6. Click "Done" to finish the installation of the certificate.
 - ► The installed certificate appears in the certificate list.

7.3 Configure VPN connections

7.3.1 Configure mGuard

The IPsec VPN connection between the iOS client and the mGuard will be established using the XAuth/Mode Config extension. The configuration of the iOS client will be configured by the mGuard and communicated to the iOS client.

IPsec VPN » Connections » IPsec ModeCfg			
General Authentication Fire	ewall IKE O	ptions	
Mode Configuration			
Mode	configuration	Server	•
	Local	From table below	•
Seq. (+)		Network	
1 🕂		172.16.100.0/24	
	Remote	From the pool below	•
Remote IP	network pool	172.16.101.0/24	
Tranches of size (network size betw	reen 0 and 32)	32	

Figure 7-7 mGuard VPN configuration – Mode Configuration

7.3.1.1 Tab "General"

To configure a VPN connection to an iOS client on the mGuard, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections".
- 2. Click the icon \bigoplus to create a new table row.
- 3. Click the icon 🖍 "Edit row".
 - ► The tab "General" appears.
- 4. Enter a descriptive name for the connection and change further settings optionally.



- Verify that the input field "Address of the remote site's VPN gateway" contains the value "**%any**" and "Connection startup" is set to "**Wait**" (default values).
- 5. In section Mode Configuration select Mode configuration Server.
- 6. **Local**: Enter the local network(s) on the server side (mGuard) that shall be accessible by the iOS client via VPN connection.
 - **Fixed**: The *Local IP network* must be set to 0.0.0/0. In this case, all traffic from the iOS client will be sent over the VPN connection.
 - From table below: Only traffic to the *Networks* listed in the *table below* will be send over the VPN connection. On iOS clients, traffic to networks not listed in the *table below* will bypass the VPN connection.
- 7. **Remote**: Define the network pool (**From the pool below**) from which the mGuard allocates a variable tranche (**Tranches of size**) to be used by the remote client's network.

Management	IPsec VPN » Connections » IPsec	c ModeCfg	
Network			
Authentication	General Authenticatio	Firewall IKE Options	
Administrative Users	Authentication		?
Firewall Users			
RADIUS	Authentication method	X.509 Certificate	-
Certificates			
Network Security	Local X.509 certificate	76.126.21.44	•
IPsec VPN	Remote CA certificate	Root CA	•
Global			
Connections	VPN Identifier		
L2TP over IPsec			
IPsec Status	Local		
OpenVPN Client	Demete		
QoS	Remote		
Redundancy		<	Back

7.3.1.2 Tab "Authentication"

Figure 7-8 mGuard VPN configuration – Authentication

The VPN connection between an iOS client and the mGuard must be authorized by X.509 certificates, that have to be installed on the corresponding devices (see "Manage certificates" on page 178).

To assign the required certificates to a VPN connection, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections".
- 2. Edit the desired VPN connection (Tab "Authentication").
- 3. Select the Authentication method "X.509 Certificate".
- 4. As the Local X.509 certificate select the mGuard Machine Certificate.



The *Common Name* (CN) and *Subject Alternative Name* of the certificate must match the IP address (or host name/DNS name) of the mGuard device that the iOS client uses to establish a VPN connection with the mGuard device (see Section 7.2.1).



The certificate must have been signed by the CA Certificate that has been installed on the iOS client.

- 5. As the *Remote CA certificate* select the *CA Certificate* that has been used to sign the **iOS Client Certificate**.
- 6. Click "Apply" to save the settings.
 - ▶ The VPN connection will be established after being initiated by the iOS client.

7.3.1.3 Tab"Firewall"

The VPN firewall restricts the access through the VPN tunnel. You may configure the VPN firewall if required.



By default, any incoming and outgoing traffic will be accepted.

7.3.1.4 Tab "IKE Options"

IPsec VPI	Psec VPN » Connections » KBS12000DEM1061						
Gene	eral Authentication	Firewall IKE Options	1				
ISAK	IP SA (Key Exchange)						0
Seq.	\oplus	Encryption		Hash		Diffie-Hellman	
1	⊕ Î	AES-256	•	All algorithms	•	All algorithms -	
IPsec	SA (Data Exchange)						
Seq.	\oplus	Encryption			Hash		
1	(\div)	AES-256	•		SHA-512	•	
2	÷ 🗎	AES-256	-		SHA-1	-	
Per	fect Forward Secrecy (PFS) The remote site n	(Activation recommended. nust have the same entry.)	No				•
Lifetin	Lifetimes and Limits						
		ISAKMP SA lifetime	12:00:00				seconds (hh:mm:ss)
		IPsec SA lifetime	4:00:00				seconds (hh:mm:ss)

It is necessary to change the default IKE options:

- 1. Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections".
- 2. Edit the desired VPN connection (Tab "IKE Options").
- 3. Configure the following settings and leave all other settings on default.

ISAKMP SA (Key Exchange)

- Encryption: AES-256
- Hash: All algorithms
- Diffie-Hellman: All algorithms

IPsec SA (Data exchange)

- Click the icon \bigoplus to create two table rows and use the following settings:
 - (Row 1) Encryption: AES-256 | Hash: SHA-512
 - (Row 2) Encryption: AES-256 | Hash: SHA-1

No SIM	Ŷ		13:38	∦ 49%∎	Cancel		To mGuard	Done
	Setting	gs		VPN			ahaha	
	Q Settir	ngs	VPN CONFIGURATIONS		Ture		CISCO	100 >
			Status	Not Connected	Type			IPSec >
≁	Airplane Mode	\bigcirc			Descriptio	n to mGuard		
?	Wi-Fi	guestnet	tc-1416		Server	192.168.1.3		
*	Bluetooth	On	Unknown	U	Account	any name		
			tc-1416-NAT Unknown	(j)	Password	•••••		
	Mobile Data	NO SIM			Use Certif	cate		
VPN	VPN	Not Connected	Add VPN Configuration	on	Certificate			iOS-Client >
					PROXY			
	Notifications				0	ff	Manual	Auto

7.3.2 Configure iOS client

Figure 7-9 iOS client: VPN configuration

To configure an IPsec VPN connection on the iOS client, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "Settings >> VPN".
- 2. Click "Add VPN Configuration...".
- 3. Click "Type".
- 4. Select "IPSec" and click "Back".
- 5. Fill out the following input fields:
 - Description: A descriptive name for the connection
 - Server: The external IP address or the DNS name of the mGuard server



_

This IP address or host name/DNS name must match the *Common Name* (CN) and *Subject Alternative Name* of the mGuard Machine Certificate (see Section 7.2.1).

- Account: The Authentication of VPN peers relies on certificates. Thus the account name and password will be **ignored by the mGuard**. To avoid ongoing requests, enter some random text.
- Password: The password will be ignored by the mGuard. Enter random text.
- Use Certificate: To select a certificate, activate the switch.
- 6. Click "Certificate".
 - ► A list with all installed certificates appears.
- 7. Select the appropriate client certificate and click "Back".
- 8. Click "Done" to save the configuration.
 - ► The VPN configuration has been saved and is ready to be started.



7.4 Start VPN connections on the iOS client

Figure 7-10 Start VPN connection on the iOS client

To start an IPsec VPN connection on the iOS client, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "Settings >> VPN".
- 2. Click on the name of the appropriate VPN connection.
- 3. In the area "Status", click the Button "Not Connected".
 - ► The VPN connection will be established and the status changes from "Not Connected" to "Connected".



If the connection fails, click the Info icon of the VPN connection to check for errors in the configuration or check your internet connection.

7.5 Check VPN connections on the mGuard

IPsec			
	Status		
⊁՝ Wa	iting		0
ISAKMP SA	Local	76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin, O=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=76.126.21.44, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com	aes-256;(sha1 sha2-512);modp- (1024 1536 2048 3072 4096 6144 8192)
	Remote	%any:500 / (none)	
IPsec SA		IPsec ModeCfg: 172.16.100.0/24172.16.101.0/24	aes-256;(sha1 sha2- 512)
Per	nding	(no entries)	
T Est	ablished	76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin,	
	Local	O=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=76.126.21.44, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com	main-r3 replace in 7h 58m 14s (active)
ISAKMP SA	Local	0=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=76.126.21.44, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com 76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin, 0=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=kbe, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com	main-r3 replace in 7h 58m 14s (active) aes-256;(sha1 sha2-512); modp - (1024 1536 2048 3072 4096 6144 8192)

Figure 7-11 IPsec VPN status

To check the status of an IPsec VPN connection, proceed as follows:

- Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> IPsec Status".
 - ► An established IPsec VPN connection appears in the area "Established".

mGuard

8 Establish an IPsec VPN connection between Android client and mGuard device



Contents of this document

This document describes the required steps to configure a VPN connection between the mGuard server and an Android client (tablet PC or mobile phone with Android OS version 6.0).

8.1	Introduction	191
8.2	Manage certificates	192
8.3	Configure VPN connections	195
8.4	Start VPN connections on the Android client	200
8.5	Check VPN connections on the mGuard	201

8.1 Introduction

The Android device acts as a remote client that initiates the IPsec VPN connection. The mGuard acts as the local server and configures and provides the local network for the clients via the XAuth/Mode Config extension.

The VPN connections require the installation of X.509 certificates and keys both on the Android client and the mGuard device.



i

For general information on how to configure VPN connections, please refer to the "Software Reference Manual – mGuard Firmware", available <u>online</u> or in the PHOENIX CON-TACT Webshop at: <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>. For further information regarding the Android client, please refer to the corresponding manufacturer's web page.

Settings and user interfaces may look different on different Android devices. They depend on the manufacturer's implementation. The present document was created on the basis of the following device: *SAMSUNG SM-T580* with installed Android version 6.0.1.

8.1.1 Requirements

- mGuard device with installed firmware 8.5 or later
- Android device with installed firmware version 6.0
- All required and signed certificates

1

How to obtain X.509 certificates?

For further information about certificate management please refer to the application note X.509 CERTIFICATES, available in the PHOENIX CONTACT Webshop at: <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

8.2 Manage certificates

To establish an IPsec VPN connection between an Android client and the mGuard server, the devices need to authenticate each other via X.509 certificates.

Device	Required certificate	Format
mGuard CA Certificate		PEM / CER
	mGuard Machine Certificate (signed by CA)	PKCS#12
Android client	mGuard Machine Certificate (signed by CA)	PEM / CER
	Android Client Certificate (signed by CA)	PKCS#12



Figure 8-1 Certificate handling for connections initiated by Android clients



The terms "Machine Certificate" and "Client Certificate" signify an X.509 certificate and it's corresponding private key by which the machine/client identifies itself to it's peers.

8.2.1 Required certificates on the mGuard device

The following certificates need to be installed on the mGuard device.

mGuard Machine Certificate (PKCS#12)

The **Android client** verifies the mGuard on the basis of the mGuard Machine Certificate. The mGuard Machine Certificate must therefore be installed on the Android client.

8.2.2 Required certificates on the Android client

The following certificates need to be installed on the Android device (see page 192).

1. mGuard Machine Certificate (PEM/CER)

The Android client verifies the mGuard server on the basis of the mGuard Machine Certificate.

2. Android Client Certificate (PKCS#12)

The mGuard verifies the Android client on the basis of the Android Client Certificate signed by the CA. The signing CA Certificate must therefore be installed on the mGuard.

8.2.3 Install certificates on the mGuard device

Machine Certificate

To upload the mGuard Machine Certificate to the mGuard, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu Authentication >> Certificates >> Machine Certificates.
- 2. Click the icon \bigoplus to create a new table row.
- 3. Click the icon 🛅 .
- 4. Choose the Machine Certificate (PKCS#12 file) and click "Open".
- 5. Enter the password, that has been used to protect the private key of the certificate.
- 6. Click the button "Upload".
 - ► The uploaded certificate appears in the certificates list.
- 7. Click "Apply" to save the settings.
 - The mGuard Machine Certificate has been uploaded and can be used for authentication towards the Android client (see "Configure the mGuard", "Tab "Authentication"").

CA Certificate

To upload the CA Certificate to the mGuard, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu Authentication >> Certificates >> CA Certificates.
- 2. Click the icon \bigoplus to create a new table row.
- 3. Click the icon \square .
- 4. Choose the CA Certificate (PEM or CER file) and click "Open".
- 5. Click the button "Upload".
- ► The uploaded certificate appears in the certificates list.
- 6. Click "Apply" to save the settings.
 - ► The CA Certificate has been uploaded and can be used to authenticate the Android client certificate (see "Configure the mGuard", "Tab "Authentication"").

My Files	SEARCH VIEW AS MORE	My Files		WAS MORE	My Files	SEARCH VIEW AS MORE
Recent files	Android +	Recent files	Android +		Recent files	Android +
∼ 🕕 Device storage	SD card > Zertifikate > Android	✓	SD card > Zertifikate > Android		✓ □ Device storage	SD card > Zertifikate > Android
∽ □ SD card	test77.245.33.89.cer	→ 🚺 SD card	test77.245.33.89.cer		√ 📋 SD card	76.126.21.44.cer
~ 🦰 Android	testkbe+ca.p12	Download history	testkbe+ca.p12		Download history	testkbe+ca.p12
LOST.DIR		Document Extract f	from testkbe+ca		Documents	
		Enter the pass	sword to extract the certificates.		Images	
Android		Audio	CANCEL OK		Audio Certif	cate name
iOS		D Videos			Videos 76.126.	te name 11.44
Download history					Used fo VPN a	nd apps
Documents					Package o One user o	ontains: ertificate
Images						CANCEL OK
Audio		STORAGE USAGE			_	UNITALE OK

8.2.4 Install certificates on the Android client

To install the **Android Client Certificate** (PKCS#12 file with signing CA certificate) and the **mGuard Machine Certificate** (PEM / CER file) on the Android client, proceed as follows:

- 1. To use the VPN feature on the Android device, you must set the screen lock type pattern, PIN, or password.
- 2. Make the certificate files available on the Android client.
- 3. Open the PKCS#12 file (*.*p12*) to extract and install the Android Client and signing CA Certificates.
 - ► The screen "Extract from <certificate name>" appears.



Ť

If the screen does not appear and the device displays the content of the file instead, download the file to the storage of your device or make it available via SD card. Open the file from the corresponding directory.

- 4. Enter the password and click "OK".
 - ► The screen "Certificate name" appears.
- 5. Optional: Assign a new name to the certificate to easily locate the certificate in the certificate list.
- 6. Click "OK" to finish the installation of the Android Client and signing CA Certificate.
 - The installed certificates appear in the user certificates list (Apps >> Settings >> Lock screen and security >> Other security settings >> User certificates).
- 7. Open the PEM or CER file (*.pem / *.cer) to install the mGuard Machine Certificate.

► The screen "Certificate name" appears.

If the screen does not appear and the device displays the content of the file instead, download the file to the storage of your device or make it available via SD card. Open the file from the corresponding directory.

- 8. Click "OK" to finish the installation of the mGuard Machine Certificate.
 - The installed certificate appears in the user certificates list (Apps >> Settings >> Lock screen and security >> Other security settings >> User certificates).

8.3 Configure VPN connections

8.3.1 Configure the mGuard

The IPsec VPN connection between the Android client and the mGuard will be established using the XAuth/Mode Config extension. The configuration of the iOS client will be configured by the mGuard and communicated to the iOS client.

Psec VPN »	Connections » IPsec ModeCfg	
Genera	al Authentication Firewall IKE	Options
Mode Co	onfiguration	
	Mode configuration	Server 🗸
	Local	From table below
Seq.	\oplus	Network
1	÷ 1	172.16.100.0/24
	Remote	From the pool below
	Remote IP network pool	172.16.101.0/24
т	Franches of size (network size between 0 and 32)	32

Figure 8-2 mGuard VPN configuration – Mode Configuration

8.3.1.1 Tab "General"

To configure a VPN connection to an Android client on the mGuard, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections".
- 2. Click the icon \bigoplus to create a new table row.
- 3. Click the icon 🖍 "Edit row".
 - ► The tab "General" appears.
- 4. Enter a descriptive name for the connection and change further settings optionally.



- Verify that the input field "Address of the remote site's VPN gateway" contains the value "**%any**" and "Connection startup" is set to "**Wait**" (default values).
- 5. In section Mode Configuration select Mode configuration Server.
- 6. **Local**: Enter the local network(s) on the server side (mGuard) that shall be accessible by the Android client via VPN connection.
 - Fixed: The Local IP network must be set to 0.0.0/0. In this case, all traffic from the Android client will be sent over the VPN connection.
 - **From table below**: Only traffic to the *Networks* listed in the *table below* will be send over the VPN connection.



Android clients do not fully support this feature. Traffic from Android clients to networks not defined in the *table below* **will be blocked!**

7. **Remote**: Define the network pool (**From the pool below**) from which the mGuard allocates a variable tranche (**Tranches of size**) to be used by the remote client's network.

Management	IPsec VPN » Connections » IPsec	c ModeCfg	
Network			
Authentication	General Authenticatio	Firewall IKE Options	
Administrative Users	Authentication		?
Firewall Users			
RADIUS	Authentication method	X.509 Certificate	-
Certificates			
Network Security	Local X.509 certificate	76.126.21.44	-
IPsec VPN	Remote CA certificate	Root CA	•
Global			
Connections	VPN Identifier		
L2TP over IPsec			
IPsec Status	Local		
OpenVPN Client	Demote		
QoS	Remote		
Redundancy		<	Back

8.3.1.2 Tab "Authentication"

Figure 8-3 mGuard VPN configuration – Authentication

The VPN connection between an Android client and the mGuard must be authorized by X.509 certificates, that have to be installed on the corresponding devices (see "Manage certificates" on page 192).

To assign the required certificates to a VPN connection, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections".
- 2. Edit the desired VPN connection (Tab "Authentication").
- 3. Select the Authentication method "X.509 Certificate".
- 4. As the Local X.509 certificate select the mGuard Machine Certificate.



Only for connections from iOS clients: The CN of the certificate must correspond with the external IP address or DNS name of the mGuard server.

1 Th

The certificate must have been signed by the CA Certificate that has been installed on the Android client.

5. As the *Remote CA certificate* select the *CA Certificate* that has been used to sign the **iOS Client Certificate** and the **Android Client Certificate**.

6. Click "Apply" to save the settings.

► The VPN connection will be established after being initiated by the Android client.

8.3.1.3 Tab"Firewall"

The VPN firewall restricts the access through the VPN tunnel. You may configure the VPN firewall if required.



By default, any incoming and outgoing traffic will be accepted.

8.3.1.4 Tab "IKE Options"

IPSec VPN	Psec VPN » Connections » KBS12000DEM1061						
Gene	eral Authentication	Firewall IKE Options]				
ISAKN	IP SA (Key Exchange)						?
Seq.	\oplus	Encryption		Hash		Diffie-Hellman	
1	⊕ ≡	AES-256	•	All algorithms	•	All algorithms	•
IPsec	SA (Data Exchange)						
Seq.	\oplus	Encryption			Hash		
1	\oplus	AES-256	•		SHA-512	-	
2	(+) T	AES-256	-		SHA-1	-	
Per	fect Forward Secrecy (PFS) The remote site n	(Activation recommended. nust have the same entry.)	No				•
Lifetin	nes and Limits						
		ISAKMP SA lifetime	12:00:00				seconds (hh:mm:ss)
		IPsec SA lifetime	4:00:00				seconds (hh:mm:ss)

It is necessary to change the default IKE options:

- 1. Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> Connections".
- 2. Edit the desired VPN connection (Tab "IKE Options").
- 3. Configure the following settings and leave all other settings on default.

ISAKMP SA (Key Exchange)

- Encryption: AES-256
- Hash: All algorithms
- Diffie-Hellman: All algorithms

IPsec SA (Data exchange)

- Click the icon \bigoplus to create two table rows and use the following settings:
 - (Row 1) Encryption: AES-256 | Hash: SHA-512
 - (Row 2) Encryption: AES-256 | Hash: SHA-1

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

The PFS must be set to No.
 (Even if set to No, iOS clients will still be able to use PFS.)

ISAKMP SA lifetime

- 12:00:00 (hh:mm:ss)

IPsec SA lifetime

- 04:00:00 (hh:mm:ss)

S ▲ Ξ ← @ ØI ≣	第 100%	S & ⊷ © \$ = #		¥ 100%∎09:44	S ▲ ⊟ © Q I H		🕅 100% 🗎 09:4
	More connection settings	Settings	SEARCH 🔶 VPN	ADD VPN MORE	Settings SEARCI		
😵 Wi-Fi	Nearby device scanning On	💿 Wi-Fi	Edit VPN network	٠	Bluetooth Airplane mode	VPN to mGuard	٥
Bluetooth	Printing	Bluetooth	VPN to mGuard				
Airplane mode	VPN	Airplane n	Type IPSec Xauth RSA ▼		Data usage		
🔟 Data usage	Set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).	🕡 Data usag	Server address		More connection settings		
More connection settings	Concernen	More conr	IPSec user certificate		Ø Smart Manager		
Smart Manager	Off	Smart Ma	testkbe+ca 🔻		Applications		
Applications		Applicatic	IPSec CA certificate testkbe+ca 💌		Sound		
Sound		Sound	IPSec server certificate		Notifications		
Notifications		Notification	Show advanced options		O not disturb		
O not disturb		💿 Do not dis			🕞 Display		
🐻 Display		🐻 Display	DELETE CANCEL SAVE		Advanced features		
Advanced features		mGuard			Users		

8.3.2 Configure the Android client

To configure an IPsec VPN connection on the Android client, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "Settings >> More connection settings >> VPN".
- 2. Click "ADD VPN" or "+".
 - ► The screen "Edit VPN network" appears.
- 3. Configure the following settings:
 - Name: A descriptive name for the connection
 - Type: IPSec Xauth RSA
 - Server address: The external IP address or the DNS name of the mGuard server
 - IPSec user certificate: Select the name you have assigned to the Android Client Certificate from the PKCS#12 file.
 - IPSec CA certificate: Select the name you have assigned to the Android Client Certificate from the PKCS#12 file.
 - IPSec Server certificate: Select the name you have assigned to the mGuard Machine Certificate of the mGuard server (VPN gateway).
- 4. Click "Save" to save the configuration.
 - ► The VPN configuration has been saved and is ready to be started.



8.4 Start VPN connections on the Android client

Figure 8-4 Start VPN connection on the Android client

To start an IPsec VPN connection on the Android client, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the menu "Apps >> Settings >> More connection settings >> VPN".
- 2. Click on the name of the appropriate VPN connection.
 - ► The screen "Connect to <connection name>" appears.



The username and password for Xauth will be ignored by the mGuard. Enter some random text and save the account information.

- 3. Click "CONNECT" to start the connection.
 - ► The VPN connection will be established and the status changes from "Not Connected" to "Connecting..." to "Connected".



If the connection fails, click the "gear" symbol of the VPN connection to check for errors in the configuration or check your internet connection.

8.5 Check VPN connections on the mGuard

		atus				
IPsec Status						
Դ ՝ Wa	iting		0			
ISAKMP SA	Local	76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin, O=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=76.126.21.44, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com	aes-256;(sha1 sha2-512);modp- (1024 1536 2048 3072 4096 6144 8192)			
	Remote	%any:500 / (none)				
IPsec SA		IPsec ModeCfg: 172.16.100.0/24172.16.101.0/24	aes-256;(sha1 sha2- 512)			
Per Per	nding	(no entries)				
≁ г	abliabad					
Est	ablished Local	76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin, O=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=76.126.21.44, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com	main-r3 replace in 7h 58m 14s (active)			
★ Est	ablished Local Remote	76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin, O=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=76.126.21.44, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com 76.126.21.44:500 / C=DE, ST=Germany, L=Berlin, O=PHOENIX CONTACT Cyber Security AG, OU=IPsec ModeCfg Test Dept., CN=kbe, E=mhopf@phoenixcontact.com	main-r3 replace in 7h 58m 14s (active) aes-256;(sha1 sha2-512); modp - (1024 1536 2048 3072 4096 6144 8192;			

Figure 8-5 IPsec VPN status

To check the status of an IPsec VPN connection, proceed as follows:

- Select the menu "IPsec VPN >> IPsec Status".
 - ► An established IPsec VPN connection appears in the area "Established".

mGuard

9 Update the mGuard configuration using pull configuration



Contents of this document

This document describes how to perform pull configuration for your mGuard device. It also describes how to obtain pull-config feedback from the server logs.

9.1	Introduction	203
9.2	Configure pull configuration on the mGuard device	203
9.3	Pull configuration using mdm	204
9.4	Obtaine pull configuration feedback from server logs	204

9.1 Introduction

An mGuard device can automatically "retrieve" new configuration profiles from a configuration pull server (*pull configuration*), provided that the corresponding profiles (with file extension .*atv*) have been stored there.

New configurations can be created and stored on the pull server using the mGuard device manager (mdm / FL MGUARD DM). The intervals at which new configurations are "re-trieved" from the pull server can be configured on the mGuard device.

9.2 Configure pull configuration on the mGuard device

Proceed as follows to configure pull configuration on the mGuard device:

- 1. Log on to the web interface of the mGuard device.
- 2. Open Management >> Central Management (see also mGuard firmware manual).
- 3. Specify a schedule for the mGuard device to send a request to the pull server (*pull request*).
- 4. Make other settings, if required.

At the specified intervals, the mGuard device will attempt to "retrieve" new configurations from the pull server.

9.3 Pull configuration using mdm

Pull configuration (*pull configuration*) is one method for updating the configurations or the firmware version of an mGuard device using the mGuard device manager (mdm / FL MGUARD DM).

The configurations created in the mdm are first exported to the pull server and later "retrieved" by the mGuard device or uploaded to the device (see also <u>mdm software</u> <u>manual</u>).

The mGuard device sends the status of its configuration as a HTTP(S) request on every request to the pull server. The pull server then sends a SYSLOG message to the mdm server (*pull feedback*) in order to inform the mdm server about the configuration status of the mGuard device.



Figure 9-1 Pull configuration using mdm

Configure the mdm server to be able to receive SYSLOG messages from the HTTPS pull server.

i

Please make sure that neither the network connection between the HTTPS pull server and the mdm server nor the network connection between the HTTPS pull server and the mGuard device is blocked by a firewall or a NAT router.

9.4 Obtaine pull configuration feedback from server logs

In the event that communication from the configuration pull server to the mdm server is blocked due to firewall or NAT settings, the status of a *configuration pull* can also be obtained from the log entries of the pull server.

When an mGuard device retrieves a new configuration from the pull server, the mGuard device returns specific parameters (e.g., update status) as pull configuration feedback (*pull feedback*) in the form of an URL to the pull server (see the following Examples and Table 9-1). The pull server logs can be evaluated to verify whether the configuration pull was successful.

Examples

1. Configuration applied successfully:

"GET

//atv//0000001.atv?**a**=8.6.0.default&**b**=N205414313033131033abebcecfccecefcc& **c**=2031420608&**d**=e2adce0a1edd2c72e1910303f9d86925&**e**=0&**f**=-&**g**=-&**k**=-&**i**=0&**j**=0&**z**=1670 HTTP/1.1" 2. Invalid configuration (because of missing license for an activated function):

"GET

//atv//0000001.atv?**a**=8.6.0.default&**b**=N205414313033131033abebcecfccecefcc& **c**=2031420608&**d**=e2adce0a1edd2c72e1910303f9d86925&**e**=5&**f**=-&**g**=-&**k**=-&**i**=0&**j**=0&**z**=71de HTTP/1.1"

Table 9-1	List of HTTP(S) requ	est parameters evaluated by	y the mGuard device manager (mdm)
-----------	----------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------------

Parameter	Meaning	Status	Description
a	mGuard firmware version		Firmware version currently installed on the mGuard device
b	mGuard Flash ID		Flash ID of the mGuard device
C	mGuard device serial number		Serial number of the mGuard device
d	md5 hash of mGuard configuration		md5 hash value of the configuration currently used on the mGuard device
e	Update status of mGuard configuration (<i>configuration pull</i>)	0	The configuration on the mGuard device has been successfully updated.
		1	No update:
			The configuration on the mGuard device already is up to date.
е		2	No update:
			The new configuration could not be applied on the mGuard device. The previous configuration was restored (<i>rollback</i>).
		3	No update:
			The mGuard blocks the new configuration be- cause it was restored (<i>rollback</i>) during a previ- ous application attempt.
		4	No update:
			It was not possible to buffer the old configura- tion on the mGuard device for restoring (<i>roll-back</i>) it later, which might be required.
		5	No update:
			The configuration that was to be used to update the mGuard device is invalid.
		-	No update:
			The configuration on the device should not be updated.
f	Status of the mGuard firmware update	0	The firmware update on the mGuard device was executed successfully.
		-	No update:
			A firmware update should not be executed on the device.

mGuard / mdm

		Any other	No update:
		character	Firmware update failed
g	Status of license download	0	One or more licenses have been successfully in- stalled on the mGuard device.
		-	A license should not be installed on the device.
		Any other	Installation of the license failed
		character	
k	Status of <i>key renewal</i>	0	The keys (<i>ssh</i> and <i>https</i>) on the mGuard device have been successfully renewed.
		1	Key renewal failed
		2	Key renewal has not been executed
			Renewal is recommended because the current key might not be appropriately secure.
		-	Key renewal has not been executed

Table 9-1List of HTTP(S) request parameters evaluated by the mGuard device manager (mdm)

Further parameters (currently not guaranteed)

- h = Device type information; currently only set for NAT router devices. "h" is not transmitted on other devices.
- **i** = Redundancy: status of the password for *availability check*.
- **j** = Redundancy: status of the password for encryption of the network traffic between synchronized mGuard devices.
- z = 4 MSB (*Most Significant Bytes*) of the md5 hash value of meta information without leading "?" and final "&" – but with linefeed character (0x0A) appended.

10 Installing a new bootloader on mGuard devices



Document-ID: 108042_en_02

Document-Description: AH EN MGUARD BOOTLOADER © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

10.1 Introduction

Due to the hardware structures of memory chips becoming increasingly smaller, it has become commonplace that some memory cells may not be fully functional and other memory cells may lose their ability to function as time passes. This reduction in memory capacity is compensated for by increased production capacity. As a result, the desired capacity is always maintained over the product's service life.

The mGuard devices have routines for handling defective memory cells. These routines are optimized when a new bootloader is installed.



If you do not want to update the firmware version, you can downgrade the device to the desired version after updating the bootloader. The newly installed version of the bootloader is retained after you downgrade the firmware version. However, Phoenix Contact always recommends using the latest firmware.

Devices produced with an mGuard firmware version 8.7.0 or later cannot be flashed to a firmware version < 8.7.0 (downgrade).

An up-to-date firmware version ensures that there is an optimized version of the bootloader on the device. Please observe the notes on firmware updates in the user manual of the device.

10.2 Testing the bootloader

If you have an mGuard device that is no longer booting and you want to check whether the bootloader is the cause, please follow the steps below to update the bootloader.

- **1** Disconnect the device from the supply voltage.
- 2 Use a tool such as "Putty" for communicating via the serial interface on your PC.
- 3 Establish the serial connection between the PC and the mGuard device.
- 4 Start the mGuard device by applying the supply voltage. The device will attempt to boot.

The bootloader must be updated if the following error message appears in the terminal window of your tool:

U-Boot 2009.11 (Dec 13 2013 - 08:34:06) MPC83XX

New bootloader versions are installed on MGUARD **firmware versions 7.6.8** and **8.1.4** or later.

mGuard

11 Using the CGI Interface



Document-ID: 108416_en_01

Document-Description: AH EN MGUARD CGI INTERFACE © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Contents of this document

This document describes the usage of the CGI interfaces (additional HTTPS interfaces) of the mGuard device.

11.1	Introduction	209
11.2	Usage	210
11.3	Preconditions and restrictions	213
11.4	Interface nph-vpn.cgi	214
11.5	Interface nph-diag.cgi	229
11.6	Interface nph.action.cgi	231
11.7	Interface nph.status.cgi	233

11.1 Introduction

The additional HTTPS interfaces are implemented as CGI (**C**ommon **G**ateway **I**nterface) scripts, providing the following features and functionality.

Some commands are executed synchronously: they indicate the success or failure of their operation with their return code. When a VPN connection is to be established, also the progress is displayed with every significant step.

nph-vpn.cgi / nph-diag.cgi

- Accessible from a conventional HTTPS client.
- Enable/disable a VPN connection.
- Retrieve the connection status of a VPN connection.
- Triggering a "download test" in order to check whether the mGuard is able to download a configuration file from a specified HTTPS server.
- Retrieve firmware version and hardware revision of the mGuard.
- Download a support snapshot.

nph-action.cgi / nph-status.cgi

The CGI interfaces *nph-action.cgi* and *nph-status.cgi* provide an extended range of features and functionality (see Section 11.6, "Interface nph.action.cgi" and Section 11.7, "Interface nph.status.cgi").

11.2 Usage

The CGI scripts on the mGuard can be accessed via HTTPS through the same IP addresses and port on which the web interface is available. Only a different URL has to be used. Each access to a CGI script executes a single particular command. Each command responds with an UTF-8 text in the body of the HTTP reply, except for the command *snapshot*, which returns binary data. Some error conditions are signaled within the SSL respectively within the HTTP response. For example, an authorization failure is indicated by HTTP status code 401.

11.2.1 Available commands

nph-vpn.cgi / nph-diag.cgi

CGI script	Command	Purpose
nph-vpn.cgi	synup	Activate a VPN connection (synchronous command)
	syndown	Deactivate a VPN connection (synchronous command)
synstat Determine the status o nous command)		Determine the status of a VPN connection (synchro- nous command)
	sysinfo Retrieve firmware version and hardware mGuard	
	ир	Enable a VPN connection (asynchronous command)
	down	Disable a VPN connection (asynchronous command)
	status	Determine the status of a VPN connection (asynchro- nous command)
	clear	Clears the instance of a VPN connection
nph-diag.cgi	testpull	Trigger a "download test" from an HTTPS server
	snapshot	Download a snapshot from the mGuard

 Table 11-1
 Commands provided by the CGI scripts nph-vpn.cgi and nph-diag.cgi

nph-action.cgi / nph-status.cgi

For commands provided by the CGI scripts *nph-action.cgi* and *nph-status.cgi* see Section 11.6, "Interface nph.action.cgi" and Section 11.7, "Interface nph.status.cgi".

11.2.2 Command syntax

1

Using the command line tool *wget* only functions in combination with mGuard firmware versions < 8.4.0. From mGuard firmware Version 8.4.0, the command line tool *curl* can be used (parameters and options differ!). Example:

wget --no-check-certificate "https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?name=Athen&cmd=up"

curl --insecure "https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?name=Athen&cmd=up" The option --no-check-certificate (*wget*) or --insecure (*curl*) ensures that the HTTPS certificate on the mGuard does not undergo any further checking.

The command line has the following syntax when using the utility wget:

wget [...] 'https://MGUARD/CGI-SCRIPT?cmd=COMMAND' wget [...] 'https://MGUARD/CGI-SCRIPT?cmd=COMMAND&name=VPN_NAME' wget [...] 'https://MGUARD/CGI-SCRIPT?cmd=COMMAND&channel=LNET_RNET'

The command line has the following syntax when using the utility *curl*:

curl [...] 'https://MGUARD/CGI-SCRIPT?cmd=COMMAND' curl [...] 'https://MGUARD/CGI-SCRIPT?cmd=COMMAND&name=VPN_NAME' curl [...] 'https://MGUARD/CGI-SCRIPT?cmd=COMMAND&channel=LNET_RNET'

wget [] or	Utility used to issue the HTTPS request and the required arguments.
curl []	Please refer to the manual of the utility.
MGUARD	IP address and port number on which the mGuard listens for incom- ing HTTPS requests. The IP address may be preceded by username and password.
	[<username>:<password>@]<ip address="">[:<port>]</port></ip></password></username>
	Example: admin:mGuard@192.168.1.254:443
CGI-SCRIPT	Name of the CGI script to be called, either <i>nph-vpn.cgi</i> or <i>nph-diag.cgi</i> .
COMMAND	Command to be executed, described in the following pages.
VPN_NAME	Name of the VPN connection to be enabled or disabled or which sta- tus is to be retrieved. Commands: <i>synup, syndown, synstat, up, down,</i> <i>status.</i>
LNET_RNET	Local and remote VPN network. Commands: status, clear.

Table 11-2 Command syntax

Examples

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=synup&name=Service' curl [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=synup&name=Service'

1

- Under Linux and other UNIX operating systems the string beginning with https:// starts and ends with single quote ('). For other operating systems, like for example Windows, double quotes (") may be used.
- Special characters, like a space, must be quoted according to the URL encoding rules if the VPN name contains such characters.
- If the URL includes the password as shown in the examples above, be aware that an intruder may read the password from the process list or the command line history. It could be advisable to use the user with the username *user*. This user has the rights to enable or disable a VPN connection or to retrieve its status by calling the CGI scripts described in this document, but this user has neither the rights to log onto the mGuard via HTTPS or SSH, nor to apply changes to the configuration.

11.2.3 Access rights

Command	User					
	root	admin	user	netadmin	audit	
up, down, synup, syn- down	x	x	x	-	-	
status, synstat, sysinfo	х	х	х	х	х	
status & channel, clear (central VPN gateway)	x	x	-	-	-	
testpull, snapshot	х	х	-	-	-	

Table 11-3 Access rights

11.3 Preconditions and restrictions

When executing the CGI scrips *nph-vpn.cgi*, *nph-diag.cgi*, *nph-status.cgi* and *nph-ac-tion.cgi*, only the following characters may be used in user names, passwords, and other user-defined names (for example, the name of a VPN connection):

- Letters: A Z, a z
- Digits: 0 9
- Special characters: . _ ~

If other special characters, such as "space" or the "question mark", are used, they must be encoded accordingly (URL encoding).

1

i

Using the command line tool *wget* only functions in combination with mGuard firmware versions < 8.4.0. From mGuard firmware Version 8.4.0, the command line tool *curl* can be used (parameters and options differ!).

Example:

wget --no-check-certificate "https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?name=Athen&cmd=up"

curl --insecure "https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?name=Athen&cmd=up"

The option --no-check-certificate (*wget*) or --insecure (*curl*) ensures that the HTTPS certificate on the mGuard does not undergo any further checking.

11.3.1 Preconditions

The commands *synup*, *syndown*, *up* and *down* can only be used to trigger a VPN connection if it is configured as follows:

- 1. The VPN connection is disabled (menu IPsec VPN >> Connections).
- 2. At least one VPN tunnel of the VPN connection is enabled (menu **IPsec VPN >> Connections**, tab *General*, section *Transport and Tunnel Settings*).
- 3. Connection startup must be set to *Initiate* or *Initiate* on *traffic* (menu **IPsec VPN** >> **Connections**, tab *General*, section *Options*).

11.3.2 Restrictions

- Commands which are executed via the CGI interface may conflict with other activities of the mGuard and with other commands executed through different interfaces.
- A VPN connection should be triggered either by CMD contact or by the CGI interface.
 A combination of both is not supported.
- The commands *synup*, *syndown*, *up* and *down* are not supported for VPN connections which wait (*Connection startup = Wait*) for incoming VPN connections.
- The CGI interface should not be used during a firmware update or a restart of the mGuard.

11.4 Interface nph-vpn.cgi

11.4.1 cmd=(up|down), name=<VPN name>

These commands enable or disable the specified VPN connection. The name of the VPN connection must be specified with the parameter *name*.

The return value does not provide any information about the status of the VPN connection due to the asynchronous execution of these commands. Thus these commands should be followed by an execution of the command status to determine the status of the VPN connection.

Examples:

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?**cmd=up**&name=Service' wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?**cmd=down**&name=Service'

These commands return one of the following values in the HTTP reply:

Return value	Meaning
unknown	A VPN connection with the specified VPN name does not exist.
void	The VPN connection is inactive either due to an error or because it was not enabled using the CGI interface.
ready	The VPN connection is ready to establish tunnels or allow incoming queries regarding tunnel establishment.
active	At least one VPN tunnel of the VPN connection is established for the connection.

11.4.2 cmd=status, [name=(<VPN name>|*)]

This command retrieves, depending on the parameter name, the status either

- 1. of a specified VPN connection (name=[VPN name]), or
- 2. of all configured VPN connections (name=*), or
- 3. of all enabled or via *synup* activated VPN connections (parameter name not specified), providing also additional information.

In case of (1) and (2) the command returns one of the following values:

Return value	Meaning
unknown	A VPN connection with the specified VPN name does not exist.
void	The VPN connection is inactive either due to an error or because it was not enabled using the CGI interface.
ready	The VPN connection is ready to establish tunnels or allow incoming queries regarding tunnel establishment.
active	At least one VPN tunnel of the VPN connection is established for the connection.

11.4.2.1 cmd=status, name=<VPN name>

This command retrieves the status of the specified VPN connection.

Example:

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?**cmd=status**&name=Ser-vice1'

Return value	
active	

11.4.2.2 cmd=status, name=*

This command retrieves the status of all configured VPN connections.

Example:

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=status&name=*'

Return value
Service 1: active
Service 2: void

11.4.2.3 cmd=status (without parameter name)

This command retrieves the status of all enabled VPN connections, providing also additional information.

Example:

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=status'

(Parameter *name* not specified)

Return value		
fullname	Service1	
пате	MAI0003584192_1 instance	
leftnet	192.168.1.0/24	
leftgw	10.1.0.48	
leftnatport		
leftid	O=Innominate, OU=Support, CN=mGuard 3	
leftproto		
leftport		
rightnet	192.168.2.0/24	
rightgw	77.245.33.67	
rightnatport		
rightid	O=Innominate, OU=Support, CN=Central Gateway	
rightproto		

Return value	
rightport	
isakmp	6
isakmp-txt	STATE_MAIN_I4 (ISAKMP SA established)
isakmp-ltime	157s
isakmp-algo	3DES_CBC_192-MD5-MODP1536
ipsec	7
ipsec-txt	STATE_QUICK_I2 (sent QI2, IPsec SA established)
ipsec-ltime	25526s
ipsec-algo	3DES_0-HMAC_MD5

The status of the VPN connection *Service2* is not returned in this example because this connection is not enabled.

11.4.3 cmd=(synup|synstat|syndown), name=<VPN name>

These commands enable, disable, or retrieve the status of the specified VPN connection. In contrast to the commands *up*, *down*, and *status*, these commands Mare executed synchronously which means that the operation returns once a certain status has been reached.

The first character of the response indicates whether the operation could be executed successfully. Further information is provided within the rest of the response line. The reply text consists of one line only, except for the command *synup*, which establishes a VPN connection. For this command the returned text contains progress messages about the establishment of the VPN connection and a final message with the overall result.

11.4.3.1 Response message format

Each message has the format: <TYPE> <CODE> <MESSAGE BODY>

TYPE	Message type, one character: P, R or F:
	P – progress message (command <i>synup</i> only)
	R – final message, operation terminated successfully
	F – final message, operation terminated with a failure
CODE	Max. 12 characters, an abbreviation about what was done in this step (for progress messages) respectively what the final result was (for final messages). Please refer to the next chapter.
MESSAGE BODY	A sequence of text fields delimited by blanks. Each field consists of an identifier and a value, separated by an equal sign.
	At the beginning of a MESSAGE BODY there is often the field "up-time=" or "tstamp=".
	"uptime=" indicates the operation time of the mGuard in seconds, with fractional digits since its last start up.
	"tstamp=" indicates the date and time when the message was generated.
11.4.3.2 Response code

The response may contain one of the following codes:

Response code	Description
EAMBIGUOUS	The specified name of the VPN connection was ambiguous because there are several VPN connections having the same name.
EBUSY	The called CGI script is currently busy with another task or it is blocked due to a running firmware update.
ECONFPULL	The test download of a configuration profile from the HTTPS server failed.
EINVAL	The CGI command or the parameters contain syntactical errors.
EVLOOKUPGW	The host name of the remote VPN gateway could not be resolved into an IP address.
EVLOOKUPROUT	No route known to the IP address of the remote VPN gateway.
ENOENT	The specified object does not exist (e.g. a VPN connection with the specified name does not exist).
ESYNVPN001	The VPN connection was established successfully but then it was interrupted (e.g. due to a network outage). The connection should be deactivated and established again. Use the command <i>synstat</i> to determine the status of the VPN connection.
EVDIFFALG1	During the handshaking at the beginning of establishing the VPN connection (negotiation of the ISAKMP SA) the devices did not agree on the strength of the keys or the cryptographic algorithms to be used in the first phase.
EVDIFFALG2	During the handshaking at the beginning of the establishment of the VPN connection (ne- gotiation of the IPsec SA) the devices did not agree on the strength of the keys or the cryp- tographic algorithms to be used in the second phase.
EVIFDOWN	The network interface, through which the VPN connections should be established, does not have an uplink.
EVPEERNOENT1	The remote VPN peer does not know a VPN connection matching the criteria for the first IKE phase (negotiation of the ISAKMP SA). Probably the mGuard's or the peer's configura- tion is not correct.
EVPEERNOENT2	The VPN peer does not know a VPN connection which matches the criteria for the second IKE phase (negotiation of the IPsec SA). Probably the mGuard's or the peer's configuration is not correct.
EVTOUT1RESP	The mGuard did not receive a response from the remote VPN peer to his first message for establishing the VPN connection.
EVTOUTWRESP	The mGuard did not receive a response from the remote VPN peer after it has responded at least to one message.
OKCONFPULL	The test download of a configuration profile from the HTTPS server succeeded.
OKVACT	The VPN connection was already established when the <i>synup</i> command was called.
OKVDOWN	The VPN connection was disabled successfully.
OKVNOTACT	The VPN connection, which should be disabled by the <i>syndown</i> command, was already disabled.
OKVST1	The status of the specified VPN connection could be retrieved successfully.
OKVUP	The VPN connection could be established successfully.

11.4.3.3 cmd=synup

This command enables a VPN connection. The name of the VPN connection must be specified with the parameter name. This command is executed synchronously and returns once a certain status has been reached. The returned text contains progress messages about the establishment of the VPN connection and a final message with the overall result.

Example: Activate the VPN connection with the name *Service*

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=synup&name=Service'

Response:

P synup name=Service1
P deviceinfo uptime=9508.73 tstamp= 20120907095258a serial=2004010272 hostname=mguard
P vpnconn uptime=9508.79 id=MAI0003584192 gw=77.245.33.67
P dnslookup uptime=9508.83 ip=77.245.33.67
P routeinfo uptime=9508.87 via=ext1(10.1.0.48) ifstate=up
P IKEv1 uptime=9509.33 newstate=main-i2
P IKEv1 uptime=9509.88 newstate=main-i4
P IKEv1 uptime=9509.93 isakmp-sa=established id=#13
PIKEv1 uptime=9510.21 powstate=quick_i2 dpd=ep

P IKEv1 uptime=9510.31 newstate=quick-i2 dpd=on P IKEv1 uptime=9510.34 ipsec-sa=established id=#14 msg=IPsec SA 1 out of 1 is established on this side.

R OKVUP uptime=9510.36 msg=The connection is established on this side.

When the mGuard executes the command synup, it performs the following steps:

- 1. Resolve the name of the remote VPN gateway into an IP address (if required).
- 2. Determine the network interface through which the VPN connection should be established and its connectivity.

The results of both steps are reported in the lines *dnslookup* and *routeinfo*. Only if those steps were executed successfully, the mGuard continues establishing the VPN connection. If the mGuard did not receive any response from the remote VPN peer, it sends an *IKE ping* to check its availability and reports the result.

Response pattern

A response of the *synup* command consists of several progress messages and a final message with the overall result. The following structure reflects the case of a successful established VPN connection.

Response consisting of progress messages (P) and one final message (R).

P synup name= vpn_name
P deviceinfo uptime= tstamp= serial=XXXX hostname=string
P vpnconn uptime= id= vNNN gw= hostname/IP
P dnslookup uptime= ip= IP
P routeinfo uptime= via=IF(IP) ifstate=up/down/error
PIKEv1 uptime= newstate= status [key=value] send=
P IKEv1 uptime= state= status [key=value] rcvd=
P IKEv1 uptime= newstate= status
P IKEv1 uptime= newstate= status [key=value] send=
P IKEv1 uptime= state=status [key=value] rcvd=
P IKEv1 uptime= newstate= status
P IKEv1 uptime= isakmp-sa= status [key=value] info=
P IKEv1 uptime= newstate= status [key=value] send=
P IKEv1 uptime= state= status [key=value] rcvd=
P IKEv1 uptime= newstate= status
P IKEv1 uptime= newstate= status [key=value] send=
P IKEv1 uptime= ipsec-sa= status [key=value] info=
R OKVUP tstamp= msg=VPN connection is established.

Progress messages

The response always starts with the five progress messages *synup*, *deviceinfo*, *vpnconn*, *dnslookup* and *routeinfo*:

synup	Displays the given synup command with its parameter name

deviceinfo This message displays information about the mGuard. The format of this message is:			out the mGuard. The format of this message is:		
	P deviceinfo uptime= tstamp= serial=XXXX hostname=string				
	The meaning of the fields are:				
	uptime=	Operation time of the mGuard since its last start up. The value is displayed in sec onds with fractional digits. Example: uptime=75178.32			
	tstamp=	Date and time when the message was generated. Format: YYYYMMDDhhmmssx The date is followed by the time (UTC), and a lowercase letter. The meaning of the letters is as follows:			
		YYYY	4 digits ir	ndicating the year	
		MM	2 digits ir	ndicating the month	
		DD	2 digits ir	ndicating the day in the month	
		hh	2 digits ir	ndicating the hour of the day	
		mm	2 digits ir	ndicating the minute of the hour	
		SS	2 digits ir	ndicating the second of the minute	
		x	Lowercas mGuard.	e letter indicating the state of system time and date of the	
			a	System time and date are not yet synchronized.	
			b	System time was set manually or synchronized by means of an imprecise timestamp recorded every 2 hours in the mGuard's file system.	
			С	System time is synchronized by the battery buffered real time clock which had been synchronized manually or via NTP once.	
			d	System time synchronized with an NTP server once.	
			е	System time synchronized frequently with an NTP server.	
			If more th displayed	nan one case applies, the last one of the alphabetical order is I.	
	serial= Serial nu	mber of th	e device. S	paces are substituted by underscores.	
	hostname= Hos	tname of th	ne mGuard	l	

vpnconn	Particular configuration properties of the VPN connection. The format of this message is as follows:				
	P vpnconn uptime= id=vNNN gw=hostname/IP				
	The meaning of the fields are:				
	uptime=	Operation time of the mGuard since its last start up. The value is displayed in sec- onds with fractional digits. Example: uptime=75178.32			
	id=	mGuard's internal name of the VPN connection under which the connection is main- tained.			
	gw=	Remote VPN gateway of the VPN connection.			

dnslookup	Result of resolving the host name of the remote VPN peer into an IP address. The format of this mes- sage is as follows:				
	P dnslookup uptime= ip=IP				
	The meaning of the fields are:				
	uptime=	Operation time of the mGuard since its last start up. The value is displayed in sec- onds with fractional digits. Example: uptime=75178.32			
	ip=	IP address of the remote VPN peer.			

routeinfo	Network interface, through which the mGuard will try to establish the VPN connection and interface status. The format of this message is as follows: P routeinfo uptime= via=IF(IP) ifstate=up/down/error The meaning of the fields are:			
	uptime=	Operation time of the mGuard since its last start up. The value is displayed in sec- onds with fractional digits. Example: uptime=75178.32		
	via=	Network interface, through which the mGuard will try to establish the VPN connec- tion. Possible values are "ext1", "ext2", "int" "dmz0" and "dial-in".		
	ifstate=	Status of the network interface. Possible values are:		
		up	Network interface is ready for operation.	
		down	Network interface will become ready when traffic arrives that needs to be forwarded through it.	
		error	Network interface is not ready to operate. In this case the <i>synup</i> com- mand will return EVIFDOWN in the final message.	

If the mGuard does not succeed to connect to the remote VPN peer although the previous steps were executed successfully, the mGuard checks with an IKE-ping, whether the remote site answers to IKE messages. The check will be skipped, if IKE messages had already been exchanged with the peer during the connection establishment.

mGuard

ikeping Result of the <i>IKE ping</i> . The format of this message is as follows:						
	:PORT via=IF response=yesInolerror					
	The meaning of the fields are:					
	uptime=	Operation time of the mGuard since its last start up. The value is displayed in sec- onds with fractional digits. Example: uptime=75178.32				
	to=	IP addres	IP address and port number of the <i>IKE ping</i> target.			
	via=	Network interface through which the <i>IKE ping</i> was sent. Possible values are: "ext1", "ext2", "int", "dmz0" and "dial-in".				
	response=	Tells whe ues are:	ther the mGuard has received a reply to the <i>IKE ping</i> in time. Possible val-			
		yes	The mGuard has received a reply from the remote VPN peer.			
		no	The mGuard did not receive any reply from the remote VPN peer within a certain period of time.			
		error	The mGuard failed to send an IKE ping.			

Further progress messages are displayed during the establishment of the VPN connection. A final message will be displayed immediately upon failure.

IKEv1	This message is displayed if:					
	 A phase of the connection establishment has been completed. 					
	The message ma rithms that are o	The message may contain several text fields with values. Some of them may indicate the crypto algo- rithms that are offered or selected.				
	The format of thi	s message is a	as follows:			
	P IKEv1 uptime	= newstate:	-state [key=value] send=			
	P IKEv1 uptime	= state=stat	te [key=value] rcvd=			
	P IKEv1 uptime	= newstate:	-state			
	P IKEv1 uptime	= isakmp-sa	a=status id=NN info= or			
	P IKEv1 uptime	= ipsec-sa=	established id=NN info=			
	The meaning of t	the fields that	may occur is as follows:			
	uptime=	Operation time of the mGuard since its last start up. The value is displayed in sec- onds with fractional digits. For example: uptime=75178.32				
	newstate=	Status change during the establishment of the VPN connection. The value is the name of the new status.				
	state=	Current status of the VPN connection.				
	send=	Details about a sent packet.				
	rcvd=	Details about a received packet.				
	isakmp-sa=	Completion status of the first phase. Possible values are:				
		established	A new ISAKMP Security Association (ISAKMP SA) has been estab- lished.			
		reused	A suitable ISAKMP SA had already been established for another VPN connection. It was reused for this one.			
	ipsec-sa=	Completion status of the second phase. The value is always "established".				
	id=	Identifier of the first or the second phase. These identifiers are used by the mGuard internally during runtime. If an ISAKMP SA was reused, this identifier may be used to find the <i>synup</i> command, which established it.				

Final message

If the VPN connection was established successfully, the command returns either **OKVUP** or **OKVACT**.

Otherwise one of the following values is returned: **EINVAL, EAMBIGUOUS, ENOENT, ES-YNVPN001, EBUSY, EVLOOKUPGW, EVLOOKUPROUT, EVIFDOWN, EVTOUT1RESP, EVTOUTWRESP, EVDIFFALG1, EVDIFFALG2, EVPEERNOENT1, EVPEERNOENT2.**

Please refer to "Response code" on page 217 for an explanation about those codes.

11.4.3.4 cmd=synstat

This command retrieves the status of a VPN connection. The name of the VPN connection must be specified with the parameter *name*.

Example: Retrieve the status of the VPN connection with the name *Service*

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=synstat&name=Ser-vice'

Response:

R OKVST1 id=MAI0003584192 enabled=no activated=yes ike=OK ipsec=OK

If the status of the VPN connection could be retrieved successfully, **OKVST1** is returned with the following additional information:

OKVST1	The mGuard succeeded to determine the status of the VPN connection. The format of the message is as follows:				
	R OKVST1 id=id enabled=yesno1 activated=yesno2 ike=stat1 ipsec=stat2				
	The meaning of the fields are:				
	id=	Internal identifier of the VPN connection, which is used by the mGuard at runtime. It is not the configured name of the VPN connection.			
	enabled=	Indicates whether the VPN connection is configured on the mGuard as "enabled" or not.			
		Possible values are:			
		yes	VPN connection is enabled.		
		no	VPN connection is disabled.		
	activated=	Indicates wh the VPN conr CGI-script np	ether the VPN connection is "temporarily active", which is the case if nection was established with the commands synup or up through the <i>h-vpn.cgi</i> or if it was established with the CMD contact.		
		Possible valu	les are:		
		yes	Temporarily active		
		no	Not temporarily active		
	ike=	Status of the ISAKMP Security Association (ISAKMP SA) which belongs to this VPN connection. The field is only present if the VPN connection is "temporarily active".			
		Possible values are:			
		NAME	The ISAKMP SA is currently being established. The ISAKMP SA is in the state called NAME . The value of NAME differs from the other values "OK", "EXP" or "DEAD".		
		OK	ISAKMP SA is established and can be used.		
		EXP	ISAKMP SA expired. It has not yet been renewed.		
		DEAD	ISAKMP SA does not exist for this VPN connection.		
	ipsec=	Status of the nection. Disp	IPsec Security Association (IPsec SA) which belongs to this VPN con- layed only if the VPN connection is "temporarily active".		
		Possible values and their meaning are:			
		NAME	The IPsec SA is currently being established. The IPsec SA is in the state called NAME . The value of NAME differs from the other values "OK", "EXP" or "DEAD".		
		ОК	IPsec SA is established and can be used.		
		EXP	IPsec SA is expired. It is not yet renewed.		
		DEAD	IPsec SA does not exist for this VPN connection.		

If the status of the VPN connection could not be retrieved successfully, one of the following values is returned: **EINVAL**, **EAMBIGUOUS**, **ENOENT**.

Please refer to "Response code" on page 217 for an explanation about those codes.

11.4.3.5 cmd=syndown

This command disables a VPN connection. The name of the VPN connection must be specified with the parameter *name*.

Example: Disable the VPN connection with the name Service

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=syndown&name=Service'

Response:

R OKVDOWN

If the VPN connection was disabled successfully, the command returns either **OK-VDOWN** or **OKVNOTACT**.

Otherwise one of the following values is returned: **EINVAL, EAMBIGUOUS, ENOENT, EBUSY**.

Please refer to "Response code" on page 217 for an explanation about those codes.

11.4.4 Central VPN gateway commands

The commands explained in the previous chapters are used on remote mGuards which initiate VPN connections to a central VPN gateway. Two more commands are available especially for using them on a central VPN gateway which uses the *VPN Tunnel Group* feature. The *VPN Tunnel Group* feature allows lots of remote mGuards to establish the VPN connection to one single configured VPN connection on the central VPN gateway.

A VPN Tunnel Group connection has %any as peer address and the specified remote VPN network is a large network (e.g. 192.168.0.0/16), including all networks of the remote mGuards (e.g. 192.168.1.0/24, 192.168.2.0/24, 192.168.3.0/24, etc.).

The VPN connection accepts ISAKMP SAs from many different remote mGuards at the same time. Each remote mGuard is expected to establish one or more IPsec SAs in tunnel mode where the remote mGuard requests a unique subnet of the configured remote network for each of its tunnel ends.

If the central VPN gateway has only one single *VPN Tunnel Group* configured, where all remote mGuards connect to, there is no way to determine whether there exists an active connection to an individual remote mGuard. Of course, *cmd=status* can be used without a specified VPN connection name (refer to Section 11.4.2.3) but this command would determine the status of all tunnels which is rather inefficient for querying the state of one single tunnel.

Sometimes it is also desired that the administrator of the central VPN gateway can clear the VPN connection of a specific remote VPN peer. This is in particular helpful if the remote VPN peer cannot establish a new tunnel for whatever interoperability reason. IPsec is a standard but sometimes other vendors are not fully compliant to it. Without an option to clear one specific VPN connection, it is only possible to restart the complete *VPN Tunnel Group* configuration. This would mean that all VPN tunnels are dropped and need to be reestablished.

11.4.4.1 cmd=status, channel=<LNet:RNet>

This command retrieves the status of the specified VPN tunnel. LNet stands for the local VPN network, *RNet* for the VPN network of the remote peer.

Return value	Meaning		
unknown	This return value could have two reasons:		
	 A matching tunnel currently does not exist. There is neither a configured and active tunnel which has the specified networks nor a matching established tunnel of a VPN tunnel group. A matching channel is inactive due to an error (e.g. the external 		
	network is down or the hostname of the remote peer could not be resolved to an IP address (DNS)).		
ready	A connection allows incoming queries regarding the tunnel establishment.		
active	The tunnel is established.		

Example: wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@77.245.33.67/nphvpn.cgi?cmd=status& channel=10.1.0.0/16:192.168.23.0/24'

Response:

active

11.4.4.2 cmd=clear, channel=<LNet:RNet>

This command clears the specified VPN tunnel. *LNet* stands for the local VPN network, *RNet* for the VPN network of the remote peer.

Return value	Meaning	
unknown	A matching tunnel currently does not exist.	
Deleting connection	The tunnel is being deleted.	

Example:

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@77.245.33.67/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=clear& channel=10.1.0.0/16:192.168.23.0/24'

Response:

```
002 "MAI1693250436_1"[2] 77.245.32.76: deleting connection
"MAI1693250436_1"[2] instance with peer 77.245.32.76 {isakmp=#0/ipsec=#0}
cleared
```

11.4.5 cmd=sysinfo

This command retrieves the mGuard's software version, hardware name and hardware revision.

Example:

wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-vpn.cgi?cmd=sysinfo'

Response:

mGuardProductName=mGuard smart2 mGuardHardware=MGUARD2 mGuardHardwareVersion=00003000 mGuardVersion=8.6.1.default

11.5 Interface nph-diag.cgi

11.5.1 cmd=snapshot

The body of the HTTP response produced by the command snapshot is binary content. It should be saved to a file, preferable as snapshot.tar.gz. When using *wget*, use the option *output-document* to do so (*wget* ... --output-document=snapshot.tar.gz ...).

The snapshot contains the current configuration of the mGuard, the runtime parameters, and all log entries. The file also contains the VPN diagnostic messages described in this document of the last 100 VPN connection establishments at most, if the VPN connection is triggered by CMD contact or by the script nph-vpn.cgi and if the option **Archive diagnostic messages for VPN connections** (menu **IPsec VPN >> Global**, tab *Options*) is enabled. The file does not contain private information such as private keys or passwords.

Example: wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-diag.cgi?cmd=snapshot'

11.5.2 cmd=testpull

The mGuard can retrieve new configuration profiles from a HTTPS server in configurable time intervals, provided that the server makes them available as configuration profile for the mGuard (*.atv). When a new mGuard configuration differs from the current configuration, it will be downloaded and activated automatically. This option is configured through the web interface in the menu **Management >> Central Management**.

With this command it can be tested whether a configuration file can be downloaded from the configuration server according to the current settings of the mGuard. The mGuard does not apply the profile if execution of this command succeeded.

This command returns one of the following values in the HTTP reply:

OKCONFPULL	The mGuard suc	ceeded in downloading the configuration. The format of the message is:	
	R OKCONFPULL d=digest		
	The meaning of t	The meaning of the fields are:	
	digest	Alphanumerical string the mGuard sends to the IDM (MGUARD DM, MGUARD De- vice Manager) with the HTTP request in order to indicate which version of the con- figuration file has been downloaded.	
ECONFPULL	Downloading the configuration file failed. The format of the message is as follows:		
	F ECONFPULL http-code=code msg=message		
	The meaning of the fields are:		
	code	HTTP status code returned by the HTTPS server. Empty, if the HTTP status code could not be transferred due to an error on another layer, e.g. on the Secure Socket Layer (SSL).	
	message	This message indicates the cause of the error and may also contain further informa- tion. It contains also the error message of the HTTPS server if the HTTP status code is known.	

Example: wget [...] 'https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-diag.cgi?cmd=testpull'

Response:

R OKCONFPULL tstamp=20120515094007e d=d12851f0b9801e0df45c5794c7f392c5

11.6 Interface nph.action.cgi

User "root" and "admin"

The following commands are executable by the users **root** and **admin**.

Row actions

https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-action.cgi?action=<ACTION>&name=<NAME> https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-action.cgi?action=<ACTION>&rowid=<ROWID>

Table 11-4 Row actions – Parameters

Parameter	Description	
пате	Name of the connection, rule record, integrity check	
rowid	Unique ID from the configuration. (gaiconfiggoto VPN_CONNECTION:0get-rowid)	

Table 11-5Row actions – Actions

Action	Description
fwrules/inactive	Deactivates a firewall rule record
fwrules/active	Activates a firewall rule record
vpn/stop	Also stops an IPsec connection like "nph-vpn.cgi" but with less complexity
vpn/start	Also starts an IPsec connection like "nph-vpn.cgi" but with less complexity
openvpn/stop	Stops an OpenVPN connection
openvpn/start	Starts an OpenVPN connection
cifsim/validaterep	Validates the report of a CIFS/IM scan
cifsim/check-start	Starts a CIFS/IM check
cifsim/init-start	Intializes a new CIFS/IM integrity-database
cifsim/cancel	Cancels a running CIFS/IM job
cifsim/erase-db	Deletes the CIFS/IM database
cifsim/access-scan	Starts a quick file permission check of a share

User firewall logout

https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-action.cgi?action=userfw/logout&name=<NAME> &ip=<IP>

Table 11-6 User firewall logout – Parameters

Parameter	Description	
пате	Username of the logged in user of the user firewall	
ip	The actual IP-Address of the logged in user of the user firewall	

Table 11-7

-7 User firewall logout – Actions

Action	Description	
userfw/logout	Logs out the logged in firewall user	

Simple commands

(Parameters name or ID not required)

https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-action.cgi?action=<ACTION>

Table 11-8Simple commands – Actions

Action	Description	
switch/purge-arlt	Resets the Address Resolution Table in the internal switch	
switch/reset-phy- counters	Resets the PHY counters inside the switch	

User "mobile", "root" and "admin" The following commands are executable by the users **mobile**, **root** and **admin**. The user **mobile** is available since firmware version 8.3.0.

Mobile actions (User: mobile / root / admin)

 Only mGuard firmware version 8.3: https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-action.cgi?action=gsm/call&dial=<NUMBER> &timeout=<TIMEOUT>

mGuard firmware version 8.3 and 8.4:

https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1.1/nph-action.cgi?action=gsm/sms&dial=<NUMBER> &msg=<MESSAGE>

Fable 11-9	Mobile actic	ons – Parameters
------------	--------------	------------------

Parameter	Description
dial	Telephone number of the destination
timeout	Time in seconds until the call is finished
msg	Content of the short message (should be cleaned of special char- acters like umlauts)

Table 11-10 Mobile actions – Actions

Action	Description	
gsm/call	Starts a phone call	
gsm/sms	Sends a text message (SMS)	

11.7 Interface nph.status.cgi

The following commands are executable by the users **root** and **admin**.

Parameter	arameter Description	
/network/modem/state	Modem state	
https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/network/modem/state	
Answer: online offline		
/network/ntp_state	NTP time synchronization state	
https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/network/ntp_state	
Answer: disabled not_synced	synchronized	
/system/time_sync	State of the system time synchronization	
https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/system/time_sync	
Answer: not_synced manually	stamp rtc ntp gps gpslost	
/ecs/status	State of the ECS	
https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/ecs/status	
Answer:	· ·	
"1" for not present. "2" for re	moved, "3" for present an in synchronization.	
"4" for not in synchronization	and "8" for generic error	
/vpn/con	State of a VPN connection	
https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/vpn/con&name= <verbindungsname></verbindungsname>	
Answer:		
- /vpn/con/ <rowid>/armed=[ye</rowid>	slno]	
Shows whether the conn	ection is started or not	
– /vpn/con/ <rowid>/ipsec=[dov</rowid>	vnlsomelup]	
Shows the IPsec state.		
– /vpn/con/ <rowid>/isakmp=[u]</rowid>	oldown]	
Shows the ISAKMP state		
- /vpn/con/ <rowid>/sa_count=<number></number></rowid>		
Number of configured tunnel		
 /vpn/con/<rowid>/sa_count_conf=<number></number></rowid> 		
Number of configured enabled tunnel		
/fwrules	State of a firewall rule record	
https://admin:mGuard@192.168.1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/fwrules&name= <rule record=""></rule>	
Answer:		
- /fwrules/ <rowid>/expires=<se< td=""><td>econds since 1.1.1970></td></se<></rowid>	econds since 1.1.1970>	
Expiration date – 0 for no expiration		
- /fwrules/ <rowid>/state=[inact</rowid>	ivelactive]	
Activation state of the fir	ewall rule record	
/cifs/im	State of a share in the context of CIFS	
https://admin.mGuard@192 168 1	.1/nph-status.cgi?path=/cifs/im&name= <ws_share></ws_share>	

Table 11-11 CGI status

Table	11-11	CGI status
-------	-------	------------

Pa	rameter	Description					
An	Answer:						
Ac	tual check						
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/curr/all=<num< th=""><th>ber></th></num<></rowid>	ber>					
	Number of files						
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/curr/end=<sed< td=""><td>conds></td></sed<></rowid>	conds>					
	End time of the current ch	eck in seconds since 1.1.1970					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/curr/numdiffs=</rowid>	- <number></number>					
	Currently found number of	f diffs.					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/curr/operation</rowid>	=[nonelsuspendlchecklidb_build]					
	Current operation						
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/curr/scanned=</rowid>	- <number></number>					
	Number of currently check	ked files					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/curr/start=<se< td=""><td>conds></td></se<></rowid>	conds>					
	Start time in seconds since	e 1.1.1970					
Las	st check						
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/last/duration=</rowid>	<number></number>					
	Number of seconds of the	last duration					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/last/numdiffs=</rowid>	<number></number>					
	Number of differences fou	nd during the last check					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/last/start=<se< td=""><td>conds> start time in seconds since 1.1.1970</td></se<></rowid>	conds> start time in seconds since 1.1.1970					
	Start time in seconds since	e 1.1.1970					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/last/result=<s< td=""><td>ee "Last Results" below"></td></s<></rowid>	ee "Last Results" below">					
Log	g results						
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/log/fname=<fi< td=""><td>lename of the log file></td></fi<></rowid>	lename of the log file>					
-	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/log/hash=<sh< td=""><td>a1 hash></td></sh<></rowid>	a1 hash>					
_	/cifs/im/ <rowid>/log/result=<si< td=""><td>ehe "Log result" below></td></si<></rowid>	ehe "Log result" below>					

Pa	arameter D	Description
La	ast results	
-	-1:	
	The share has not yet been	checked. Probably no integrity database exists.
-	0:	
	Last check finished success	sfully.
-	1:	
	The process failed due to a	n unforeseen condition, please consult the logs.
-	2:	
	Last check was aborted due	e to timeout.
-	3:	
	The integrity database is m	issing or incomplete.
-	4:	
	The signature of the integrit	ty database is invalid.
-	5. The interview details	
	The integrity database was	created with a different hash algorithm.
-	0: The integrity database is th	a wrang varaian
-	7. The share which is to be ch	ecked is not available
_		
	The share which is to be use	ed as checksum memory is not available
_	11:	
	A file could not be read due	to an I/O failure. Please consult the report.
_	12:	
	The directory tree could no	t be traversed due to an I/O failure. Please consult the
	report.	
Lo	og result	
_	unchecked – The signature h	as not been verified, yet.
-	valid – The signature is valid	
-	Emissing – ERROR: The report	is missing.
-	<i>Euuid_mismatch – ERROR:</i> Th date.	e report does not belong to this device or is not up to
_	Ealgo_mismatch - ERROR: Th	e report was created with a different hash algorithm.
-	<i>Etampered – ERROR:</i> The rep	ort was tampered with.
-	<i>Eunavail – ERROR:</i> The repor mounted.	t is not available. For example the share might not be

– *Eno_idb* – No report exists, because of a missing integrity database.

mGuard

12 LED status indicator and blinking behavior



Document-ID: 108400_en_00

Document-Description: AH EN MGUARD LED SIGNALS © PHOENIX CONTACT 2025-06-23



Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded using the following link <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Contents of this document

This document describes the lighting and blinking behavior of the LED diodes installed in mGuard devices (FL/TC MGUARD RS2000/RS4000).

12.1	Description of LEDs	237
12.2	LED lighting and blinking behavior	239
12.3	Representation of system states	239

12.1 Description of LEDs

With the help of built-in LED diodes, mGuard devices indicate different system states. This can be status, alarm or error messages.

The states are indicated by permanent or temporary lighting or blinking of the LEDs. The displayed LED pattern can also represent a combination of different system states.



NOTE: Since several system states are indicated by the LEDs not clearly, only temporarily or in combination with other system states, the log files of the mGuard device must also be checked!

LED diodes of FL/TC MGUARD (RS200x/RS400x) devices:

P1	Stat	Mod	Info2 (Sig)
•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•
P2	Err	Fault	Info1

P1/P2

LEDs *P1* and *P2* indicate which of the two power supplies is connected (devices of the FL/TC MGUARD RS2000 series: only *P1* is available).

Info 2 / Info 1 (the LED Sig is not in use)

Active VPN connections or (as of Version 8.1) active firewall rule records can be indicated via the LEDs *Info2* and *Info1*. The activation of the LEDs by a certain VPN connection or a certain firewall rule record is configured on the mGuard interface in the menu item **Management >> Service Contacts**.

The following states will be indicated:

ON	The VPN connection is established / the firewall rule record is set.
Blink	The VPN connection will be established or released or has been stopped/dis- abled by the remote peer.
OFF	The VPN connection is stopped/disabled on both peers.

Stat / Mod / Err / Fault

The LEDs *Stat, Mod, Err* and *Fault* indicate system states (status, alarm or error messages) (see Table 12-3).

In addition to the alarm messages, an illuminated **Fault LED** generally also indicates that the device is currently not in operation mode.

LAN / WAN

The LAN/WAN LEDs are located in the LAN/WAN sockets (10/100 and duplex LED).

The LEDs Indicate the ethernet status of the LAN or WAN port. As soon as the device is connected to the relevant network, a continuous light indicates that there is a connection to the network partner in the LAN or WAN. When data packets are transmitted, the LED goes out briefly.

If all LAN/WAN LEDs are illuminated, the system is booting.

Bar graph and SIM1/2 (Mobile)

LED	State and Meaning						
Bar	LED 3	Тор	Off	Off	Off	Green	
graph	LED 2 Middle		Off	Off	Green	Green	
	LED 1 Bottom		Off	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	
	Signal strength (dBm) Network reception		- 113 111	-109 89	-87 67	-65 51	
			Very poor to none	Sufficient	Good	Very good	
SIM 1	Green On Blinking		SIM card 1 active No PIN or incorrect one entered				
SIM 2	Green On Blinking		SIM card 2 active No PIN or incorrect one entered				

Table 12-1 LEDs on TC MGUARD RS4000 3G and TC MGUARD RS2000 3G

12.2 LED lighting and blinking behavior

 Table 12-2
 Description of the lighting and blinking behavior of the LED diodes

Heartbeat	The blinking behavior is similar to a heartbeat, in which two strokes are performed in quick succession, followed by a short break.
Running light	Three lights form a continuously repeating running light from left to right and back again.
Blink 50/1500	Flashing with 1500 ms break (50 ms on, then 1500 ms off)
Blink 50/800	Flashing with 800 ms break (50 ms on, then 800 ms off)
Blink 50/100	Flashing with 100 ms break (50 ms on, then 100 ms off)
Blink 500/500	Constant blinking (500 ms on / 500 ms off)
Morse code	The blinking behavior shows the Morse code 'SOS', in which the blink-
(– – –)	ing behavior "3x short, 3x long, 3x short" is repeated continuously.
ON	The diode lights up permanently.
ON (n sec)	The diode lights up permanently for the indicated time (in seconds n)

12.3 Representation of system states

The system states (status, alarm or error messages), which are displayed by the LED's lighting and blinking behavior, are shown in Table 12-3.

Table 12-3	System states of FL/TC MGUAR	D devices represented by	y lighting and blinking	behavior of the LEDs
------------	------------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------	----------------------

STAT	MOD	Info 2	ERR	FAULT	Description of the system state	
		(Sig)				
Heart- beat					The system status is OK.	
			ON		A severe error has happened.	
ON (12 sec)	ON (3 sec)		ON (12 sec)	ON (12 sec)	The system is booting.	
Morse code					The license to operate this firmware is missing.	
Morse code			Morse code		Bootloader replacement failed due to hardware error.	
				ON	A power failure was detected.	
				ON	No connectivity on WAN interface (link supervision configurable on device)	
				ON	No connectivity on LAN interface (link supervision configurable on device)	
				ON	No connectivity on LAN 1–4 interface (link supervision configurable on device)	
				ON	No connectivity on DMZ interface (link supervision configurable on device)	
				ON	Power supply 1 or 2 failed (alarm configurable on device)	
				ON	Temperature too high / low (alarm configurable on device)	
				ON	(Redundancy) Connectivity check failed (alarm configurable on device)	
				ON	(Modem) Connectivity check failed (alarm configurable on the device)	
			ON (3 sec)		ECS: The ECS is incompatible.	
			ON (3 sec)		ECS: The capacity of the ECS is exhausted.	

mGuard

STAT	MOD	Info 2	ERR	FAULT	Description of the system state
		(Sig)			
			ON (3 sec)		ECS: The root password from the ECS does not match.
			ON (3 sec)		ECS: Failed to load the configuration from the ECS.
			ON (3 sec)		ECS: Failed to save the configuration to the ECS.
	ON				PPPD: The internal modem got a connect (set by pppd).
	Blink 50/1500				PPPD: The internal modem is armed and expecting a dial in.
	Blink 500/500				PPPD: The internal modem is dialing.
			ON (2 sec)		RECOVERY: The recovery procedure failed.
ON (2 sec)					RECOVERY: The recovery procedure succeeded.
ON				ON	FLASH PROCEDURE: The flash procedure has been started. Please wait.
Running light	Running light	Running light		ON	FLASH PROCEDURE: The flash procedure is currently executed.
Blink 50/800	Blink 50/800	Blink 50/800		ON	FLASH PROCEDURE: The flash procedure succeeded.
ON			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: The flash/production procedure failed.
			Blink 50/100 (5 sec)		FLASH PROCEDURE WARNING: Replacing the rescue system. Do not power off. When the blinking stops, the replacement of the rescue system is over.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: The DHCP/BOOTP requests failed.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: Mounting the data storage device failed.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: The flash procedure failed.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: Erasing the file system partition failed.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: Failed to load the firmware image.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: The signature of the firmware image is not valid.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: Failed to load the install script.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: The signature of the install script is not valid.
			ON		FLASH PROCEDURE: The rollout script failed.

Table 12-3System states of FL/TC MGUARD devices represented by lighting and blinking behavior of the LEDs

Please observe the following notes

Note on the usage of Application Notes

The provided Application Notes are a free service from Phoenix Contact. The examples and solutions shown are not customer-specific solutions, but general support for typical application scenarios. The Application Notes are not binding and do not claim to be complete.

A quality check of the Application Notes takes place but is not comparable with the quality assurance of commercial products. Errors, functional and performance deficiencies cannot be excluded.

To avoid malfunctions/misconfigurations and associated damage, the proper and safe use of the product/software is the sole responsibility of the customer and must comply with the applicable regulations. The customer must check the function of the examples described and adapt them to the individual, customer-specific requirements of the system or application scenario.

The IP settings in the Application Notes have been chosen as examples. In a real network scenario, these IP settings must always be adjusted to avoid address conflicts.

The information in the Application Notes is checked regularly. If corrections are necessary, they will be included in the subsequent revision. Users will not be notified.

General terms and conditions of use for technical documentation

Phoenix Contact reserves the right to alter, correct, and/or improve the technical documentation and the products described in the technical documentation at its own discretion and without giving prior notice, insofar as this is reasonable for the user. The same applies to any technical changes that serve the purpose of technical progress.

The receipt of technical documentation (in particular user documentation) does not constitute any further duty on the part of Phoenix Contact to furnish information on modifications to products and/or technical documentation. You are responsible to verify the suitability and intended use of the products in your specific application, in particular with regard to observing the applicable standards and regulations. All information made available in the technical data is supplied without any accompanying guarantee, whether expressly mentioned, implied or tacitly assumed.

In general, the provisions of the current standard Terms and Conditions of Phoenix Contact apply exclusively, in particular as concerns any warranty liability.

This manual, including all illustrations contained herein, is copyright protected. Any changes to the contents or the publication of extracts of this document is prohibited.

Phoenix Contact reserves the right to register its own intellectual property rights for the product identifications of Phoenix Contact products that are used here. Registration of such intellectual property rights by third parties is prohibited.

Other product identifications may be afforded legal protection, even where they may not be indicated as such.

How to contact us

Internet	Up-to-date information on Phoenix Contact products and our Terms and Conditions can be found on the Internet at: phoenixcontact.com
	Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded at: phoenixcontact.net/products
Subsidiaries	If there are any problems that cannot be solved using the documentation, please contact your Phoenix Contact subsidiary. Subsidiary contact information is available at <u>phoenixcontact.com</u> .
Published by	PHOENIX CONTACT GmbH & Co. KG Flachsmarktstraße 8 32825 Blomberg GERMANY
	PHOENIX CONTACT Development and Manufacturing, Inc. 586 Fulling Mill Road Middletown, PA 17057 USA
	Should you have any suggestions or recommendations for improvement of the contents and layout of our manuals, please send your comments to: tecdoc@phoenixcontact.com